

AN INTRODUCTORY  
COURSE OF THE  
**ERZYA**  
LANGUAGE

TARTU ÜLIKOOLI PAUL ARISTE SOOME-UGRI  
PÕLISRAHVASTE KESKUSE ÜLLITISED 7

AN INTRODUCTORY  
COURSE OF THE  
**ERZYA**  
LANGUAGE



2014

TARTU ÜLIKOOLI PAUL ARISTE SOOME-UGRI PÕLISRAHVASTE KESKUSE ÜLLITISED 7  
AN INTRODUCTORY COURSE OF THE ERZYA LANGUAGE

Editor-in-chief: Tõnu Seilenthal  
Author: Niina Aasmäe  
Translation: David Paul Ogren, Patrick Juho-Ville O'Rourke  
Editing: Niina Aasmäe, Marie Saarkoppel  
Layout: Sulev Iva

Publication of the textbook has been supported by the Kindred Peoples Programme (Estonia).



© Niina Aasmäe 2014

ISSN 1406-7706  
ISBN 978-9985-4-0800-1 (pdf)

## PREFACE

The aim of this course is to present an overview of the structure of standard Erzya. It includes information on the base entities of grammar, as well as didactic materials which will help the learner to read simple texts and develop everyday functional language.

The course consists of 10 units, preceded by an overview of pronunciation and word structure. Each unit introduces new grammar topics and gives examples of their use in speech. The units include various exercises through which the learner can practice the new grammar and vocabulary in reading, listening, speech, and writing. Sample texts on the topics of life stories, family life, everyday life, free time and travel illustrate the history and modern life of the Erzyan people. At the end of each unit, there is a vocabulary list with English translations. There is also a separate larger vocabulary list (Appendices III–IV), containing all the words introduced in the course as well as other important vocabulary items that will facilitate independent reading. The course is supported by links to audiovisual materials available on the Internet as well as by audio recordings (University of Tartu, Archives of Estonian Dialects and Kindred Languages or: TÜ EMSA; [www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv](http://www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv), search: DS0169-01 through DS0169-24).

The course materials are presented in the Latin alphabet (Finno-Ugric transcription). There is a supplementary section dealing with the use of Cyrillic in standard written Erzya (Appendix I).

The course is intended primarily for students of Finno-Ugric linguistics. It is appropriate for a group course with a teacher's guidance as well as for independent study. Students taking the course independently may check their work using the answer key to the exercises (Appendix II).

The course is based on the textbook "*Kortatano erzáks*" ("We speak Erzya") by Niina Aasmäe (*Kortatano erzáks. Räägime ersa keelt. – Tartu Ülikooli Paul Ariste soome-ugri põlisrahvaste keskuse üllitised*, 5. Tartu 2012). The textbook was developed with the help of many Erzya course participants over the years as well as colleagues who assisted in the writing and design of the book.

The publication of the textbook "*Kortatano erzáks*" and of this version of the textbook has been supported by the Kindred Peoples Programme (Estonia).

Niina Aasmäe

[niina.aasmae@ut.ee](mailto:niina.aasmae@ut.ee)

# CONTENTS

<b>INTRODUCTION</b>	9
<b>OVERVIEW OF PRONUNCIATION AND PHONOLOGY</b>	
Phonemes	10
Vowels	10
Consonants	10
Vowel harmony and palatalization	11
Consonant clusters	11
Assimilation	12
Effects of palatalization	12
Effects of voicing	12
Vowel elision	13
Vowel epenthesis	13
Stress	13
Exercises 1–4	14
VOCABULARY	16
<b>OVERVIEW OF WORD STOCK AND WORD FORMATION</b>	
Word stock	17
Exercise 5	17
Word formation	17
VOCABULARY	18
<b>UNIT 1</b>	
Grammar	19
Nouns and adjectives	19
The plural marker	19
Verbs: the <i>ms</i> -infinitive and present tense conjugation	19
Forms and use of the verb <i>ulems</i> ‘to be’	20
Exercises 1–7	21
Conversation and reading: <i>Shumbrat!</i> Hello!	23
Exercises 8–9	23
TEXT 1	23
Exercise 10	23
TEXT 2	23
Exercises 11–15	24
VOCABULARY	25
<b>UNIT 2</b>	
Grammar.	26
Introduction to the Erzya case system	26
The indefinite declension	26
Pronouns	28
Adverbs	28
Exercises 1–6	29
Compound forms: declinable word + <i>ulems</i> - personal ending	30
Exercises 7–8	30
Conversation and reading: <i>Kijat, kostoňat?</i> Who are you and where are you from?	31
TEXTS 1-5	31
Exercises 9–14	31
VOCABULARY	33
<b>UNIT 3</b>	
Grammar	34
Numerals	34
Declension of numerals	35
Exercises 1–6	35

Conversation and reading: <i>Meže íeči íejat?</i> What are you doing today? . . . . .	36
Exercise 7 . . . . .	37
TEXTS 1–3 . . . . .	37
Exercises 8–14 . . . . .	37
VOCABULARY . . . . .	39
<b>UNIT 4</b>	
Grammar . . . . .	40
Definite declension . . . . .	40
Exercises 1–3 . . . . .	41
Comparative forms of adjectives and adverbs . . . . .	41
Exercise 4 . . . . .	42
Conversation and reading: <i>Erzátnéde</i> About the Erzyans . . . . .	42
TEXT 1 . . . . .	42
Exercises 5–7 . . . . .	43
TEXT 2 . . . . .	43
Exercises 8–14 . . . . .	43
VOCABULARY . . . . .	45
<b>UNIT 5</b>	
Grammar. . . . .	46
Infinitives . . . . .	46
Exercises 1–3 . . . . .	46
Verb conjugation: present and past simple (preterite) . . . . .	47
Exercises 4–6 . . . . .	48
Declension of cardinal and ordinal numerals . . . . .	49
Exercise 7 . . . . .	49
Conversation and reading: <i>Veľese – ošso</i> In the country and in the city . . . . .	49
TEXT 1 . . . . .	50
Exercises 8–9 . . . . .	50
TEXT 2 . . . . .	50
Exercises 10–13 . . . . .	51
VOCABULARY . . . . .	51
<b>UNIT 6</b>	
Grammar. . . . .	52
The possessive declension . . . . .	52
Possessive declension forms . . . . .	53
Exercises 1–5 . . . . .	55
Conversation and reading: <i>Kudoraške</i> Family . . . . .	56
TEXT 1 . . . . .	56
Exercises 6–7 . . . . .	56
TEXT 2 . . . . .	56
Exercise 8 . . . . .	56
TEXT 3 . . . . .	57
Exercises 9–13 . . . . .	57
VOCABULARY . . . . .	57
<b>UNIT 7</b>	
Grammar. . . . .	59
Negative forms (present/future and past simple) . . . . .	59
Negation of the verb <i>úlems</i> . . . . .	59
Exercises 1–4 . . . . .	60
Imperative mood (indefinite conjugation) . . . . .	61
Exercise 5 . . . . .	61
Conversation and reading: <i>Éramotnéde</i> Life stories . . . . .	62
TEXT 1 . . . . .	62
Exercises 6–11 . . . . .	62
TEXT 2 . . . . .	63

Exercises 12–14 . . . . .	64
VOCABULARY . . . . .	64
<b>UNIT 8</b>	
Grammar. . . . .	65
Definite conjugation . . . . .	65
Formation of the definite conjugation . . . . .	65
Use of the definite conjugation . . . . .	67
Exercises 1–5 . . . . .	67
Derivational suffixes . . . . .	68
Conversation and reading: <i>Erva čin' íevnéde</i> Everyday life . . . . .	68
TEXT 1 . . . . .	68
Exercises 6–7 . . . . .	68
TEXT 2 . . . . .	68
Exercises 8–12 . . . . .	69
TEXT 3 . . . . .	69
Exercises 13–15 . . . . .	69
VOCABULARY . . . . .	70
<b>UNIT 9</b>	
Grammar. . . . .	71
Imperative mood (definite conjugation) . . . . .	71
Exercise 1 . . . . .	72
Non-finite verb forms . . . . .	72
Exercises 2–4 . . . . .	73
Conversation and reading: <i>Eržatněn' pele</i> Visiting the Erzyas . . . . .	73
TEXT 1 . . . . .	73
Exercises 5–8 . . . . .	74
TEXT 2 . . . . .	75
Exercises 9–13 . . . . .	75
VOCABULARY . . . . .	76
<b>UNIT 10</b>	
Grammar. . . . .	77
Conditional mood . . . . .	77
Conjunctive mood . . . . .	78
Derivational suffixes . . . . .	79
Exercises 1–5 . . . . .	79
Conversation and Reading: <i>Saranso</i> In Saransk . . . . .	80
TEXT 1 . . . . .	80
Exercises 6–7 . . . . .	81
TEXT 2 . . . . .	81
Exercises 8–9 . . . . .	82
TEXT 3 . . . . .	82
Exercise 10 . . . . .	82
VOCABULARY . . . . .	83
<b>APPENDICES</b>	
Appendix 1. Standard written Erzya – the Cyrillic alphabet . . . . .	84
Appendix 2. Key to answers . . . . .	86
Appendix 3. Erzya-English glossary . . . . .	94
Appendix 4. English-Erzya glossary . . . . .	107
Appendix 5. Audio-materials. . . . .	119

## INTRODUCTION

The Mordvin languages (Erzya and Moksha) are part of the Uralic language family, geographically belonging to the Volgaic language group. For more on the Finno-Ugric language tree, see the following links:

[www.fennougria.ee/](http://www.fennougria.ee/)  
[www.fennougria.ee/index.php?id=10553](http://www.fennougria.ee/index.php?id=10553)

The word “Mordvin” is likely to be an exonym, as no such word is native to Erzya or Moksha. Within the Republic of Mordovia (formed in the 1930s), which is located on the territory of Russia (approximately 600 km to the southeast of Moscow), the Erzyans live in the east and the Mokshans in the west. More details about the Republic of Mordovia can be found at the links below.

[www.erm.ee/et/Avasta/Soome-ugri-rahvakultuur/Mordvalased](http://www.erm.ee/et/Avasta/Soome-ugri-rahvakultuur/Mordvalased)  
<http://et.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mordva>  
<http://www.e-mordovia.ru/>  
<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mordovia>  
<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mordvins>

It is believed that only one third of all Erzyans and Mokshans live in the Republic of Mordovia; the others live outside the republic, primarily in other regions of Russia. This dispersion is one of a number of factors making it difficult for Erzyans and Mokshans to preserve their language and culture. However, they are one of the largest Finno-Ugric nations (the 2010 census showed 744,237 Erzyans and Mokshans living in the Russian Federation).

The capital of the Republic of Mordovia is Saransk (founded in 1641), a rapidly developing city whose charm is on display in the following video-clip:

[www.youtube.com/watch?v=MfQeLdSr\\_mA&feature=related](http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=MfQeLdSr_mA&feature=related)

Typologically, the Erzya and Moksha languages are typical of the Uralic language family, with elaborate case systems and verb conjugation paradigms. The written language (using the Cyrillic alphabet) was created in the 1920s and 1930s.

The course materials illustrate various aspects of Erzya culture.



Source: <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Mordovia03.png>



# OVERVIEW OF PRONUNCIATION AND PHONOLOGY

## Phonemes

Standard Erzya has 5 vowels and 28 consonants. Erzya lacks diphthongs and there is no phonemic distinction between short and long sounds. The language does, however, feature a large number of consonants. Erzya consonants have two essential features, voicing and palatalization, which help to distinguish words from one another.

## Vowels

Standard Erzya features two front vowels (*i*, *e*), two back vowels (*u*, *o*), and the vowel *a*, which functions as both a mid and a back vowel. The use of vowels, particularly in non-initial syllables, varies according to dialect. Some dialect regions exhibit the front vowel *ä* and the reduced vowel *ə*.

<i>i</i>		<i>u</i>
<i>e</i>	( <i>ə</i> )	<i>o</i>
( <i>ä</i> )		<i>a</i>

The omission of the consonants *v* and *j* in speech may lead to the appearance of consecutive vowels, i.e. *ko(v)ol* ‘cloud’, *sa(j)ems* ‘to take’. All vowels may appear in the first syllable of a word. The use of the high vowels *i* and *u* in non-initial syllables is restricted in the standard language. Exceptionally, the vowel *u* appears in non-initial syllables in words such as *narmuń/narmoń* ‘bird’, *salmuks* ‘needle’. The vowel *i* appears in suffixes, compounds and loan words, for example:

- in personal endings of verbs: *jaki, jakiń, jakiliń* (*jakams* ‘to go, move, visit’);
- before the diminutive suffix *-ńe*: *parińe* (*paro* ‘good’ + *-ńe*), *viškińe* (*viška* ‘small’ + *-ńe*);
- in compounds: *kudikelńks* ‘entryway’ (*kudo* ‘home, house’ + *ikelńks* ‘front part’);
- in loan words: *karńina* ‘picture’, *magaziń* ‘shop’.

## Consonants

The consonant inventory of Erzya, presented in the table below, consists of the following phonemes:

alveolar-dentals: *t, d, c, s, z, r, l, n, t', d', c', z', r', l', n'*;  
 postalveolars: *č, š, ž*;  
 palatals: *j*;

velars: *k, g, h*, in some dialects *ŋ*;  
 labials: *p, b, m*;  
 labiodentals: *f, v*.

plosives	<i>p b</i>		<i>t d</i>			<i>k g</i>
			<i>t' d'</i>			
affricates			<i>c</i>	<i>č</i>		
			<i>c'</i>			
fricatives		<i>f v</i>	<i>s z</i>			<i>h</i>
			<i>s' z'</i>	<i>š ž</i>		
trills			<i>r</i>			
			<i>r'</i>			
laterals			<i>l</i>			
			<i>l'</i>			
nasals	<i>m</i>		<i>n</i>			( <i>ŋ</i> )
			<i>n'</i>			
semivowels					<i>j</i>	

The alveolar-dental consonants *t, d, c, s, z, r, l, n* have palatalized counterparts which are represented through diacritics placed above the letters: *t́, d́, ć, ź, ŕ, ĺ, ń*. Palatalization refers to a process wherein a consonant is pronounced with the tongue raised near the palate. Examples of palatalization in English are the *d* in *duke*, *n* in *new*, or *t* in *Tuesday* (in British pronunciation). Compare the position of the tongue when making the initial consonant sounds in the words *duke, new,* and *Tuesday* (British pronunciation) to the position of the tongue when pronouncing the *d* in *dog, n* in *now,* and *t* in *tower*. You should feel that in the first set of words, the tongue is positioned higher in the mouth, producing what sounds like a short [j] sound immediately following the consonant.

Some consonants form contrastive pairs according to both voicing and palatalization (*t-t́, d-d́, t-d, t-t́, d-d́, s-ś, z-ź, s-z, s-ź*), for example *soks* ‘ski’ – *śokś* ‘autumn’, *pize* ‘nest’ – *piže* ‘it’s raining’, *kise* ‘for’ – *kize* ‘summer’, *lovoś* ‘the snow’ – *lovož* ‘read’ (*past participle*). Other consonants form contrastive pairs according to either palatalization (*c-ć, l-ĺ, r-ŕ, n-ń*) or voicing (*p-b, k-g, š-ž, f-v*). The consonants *m, č, j* and *h* are not paired.

The voiced plosives *b, d,* and *g* appear in word-initial position only in loan words. The consonants *f* and *h* appear only in loan words, and even then are sometimes replaced with sounds native to Erzya, e.g. Russian *фуфайка* > *kufajka, kuhajka* ‘padded cotton jacket’, *хорошо* > *karašo* ‘well’. The labiodental consonant *v* changes, especially after *o*, into a labial consonant or a (semi-) vowel (*w, u*), e.g.: *lov* /-w /-u ‘snow’. Some dialects feature the velar nasal *ŋ*: *kov* / *koŋ* ‘moon’. The velar nasal *ŋ* generally appears before *g*: *toŋgoms* ‘to insert’ as, for example, in the word English. At morpheme or word boundaries *ŋ* is not realized: *mongak* ‘me, too’ (*mon* ‘I’ + *-gak* ‘too’).

## Vowel Harmony and Palatalization

Words in Erzya are subject to the rules of vowel harmony, which guide the choice of vowels (front vowel or back vowel) in the stem and numerous suffixes. The principle of vowel harmony concerns the vowels of the first and the subsequent syllables of a word that are allowed to appear together. Vowel harmony is found in a number of Finno-Ugric (and Turkic) languages, as well as in other languages throughout the world. In Erzya, vowel harmony is expressed in the rule according to which a word may contain exclusively front vowels (*e, i*) or exclusively back vowels (*o, u*), but not both. The vowel *a* is neutral; it can appear together with either front vowels or back vowels, e.g. *piřeva* ‘through the garden’, *modava* ‘across the land’.

Palatalized consonants play a significant role in the application of vowel harmony rules. If a palatalized consonant appears in the middle of the word, it may be followed by a front vowel, even if preceded by a back vowel, e.g. *muškems* ‘to do laundry’.

Morphologically, due to vowel harmony, numerous suffixes in Erzya have both back- and front-vowel variants. Among them are the inessive case ending *-so /-se*: *kudoso* ‘in the house’, *piřese* ‘in the garden’; the elative case ending *-sto /-ste*: *kudosto* ‘out of the house’, *piřeste* ‘out of the garden’, the third person possessive suffix *-(n)zo /-(n)ze*: *kudosoŋzo* ‘in his/her house’, *piřesenze* ‘in his/her garden’, etc. Suffixes containing the vowel *a* do not have variants.

## Consonant Clusters

Most Finno-Ugric languages do not permit word-initial consonant clusters. Such clusters are found primarily in loanwords and in words of onomatopoeic /imitative origin (Erzya examples: *přaka* ‘patty’, *kravtoms* ‘to drive away, stave off’).

However, initial consonant clusters can emerge, due to vowel elision, in some other words, too: e.g. *přa, piřa* ‘head’, *kstij, kistij* ‘strawberry’. The older form (with the vowel preserved) may remain in the language as an archaism or dialect word, although such variants are generally absent for older loanwords (*kšī* ‘bread’, *kšni* ‘iron’, *kšnav* ‘pea’).

Word roots exhibit a tendency towards open-syllable (consonant + vowel) structure, e.g. *kudo* ‘house, home’, *vele* ‘village’. Due to historical vowel elision, many Erzya words end in consonants, e.g. *kal* ‘fish’ (Finnish and Estonian *kala*), *kev* ‘stone’ (Finnish and Estonian *kivi*). The addition of

derivational suffixes and endings, combined with vowel elision, leads to the appearance of consonant clusters in the middle and at the end of words (e.g. *morams* – *moršekšhems* ‘to sing’), which makes it more difficult to syllabify such words. Affixation may also cause the appearance of double consonants, e.g. *lomańńeń* (*lomań* ‘person’ + *-ńeń*, dative case suffix), *sokssso* (*soks* ‘ski’ + *-so*, inessive case ending), but such double consonants do not appear in word stems.

Words may contain many syllables due to the various suffixes which may be added to the stem, for example *morícatńeńtemestkak* ‘without their singers, too’. However, disyllabic words appear more frequently in speech than do longer words.

## Assimilation

### Effects of Palatalization

Several kinds of assimilation, primarily according to palatalization and voicing, occur in Erzya. Consonants are frequently palatalized under the influence of neighbouring palatalized consonants. In the spoken language, palatalization may even be extended to those consonants that do not conventionally form contrastive (palatalized-unpalatalized) pairs: *m, p, b, v, f, k, g*. This kind of palatalization is not marked in the Latin transcription used in this course (for example: *pe* ‘end’, *kije* ‘who’). There is a small number of words in which the presence of a front vowel does not cause palatalization in an adjacent consonant, e.g. *kize* ‘summer’, *sivel* ‘meat’, *si* ‘comes, coming’, *tiń* ‘you (pl.)’, *siń* ‘they’, etc.

In suffixes added to a word stem, palatalization (or lack thereof) depends on the sounds that appear in the previous syllable. Back vowels and unpalatalized consonants are followed by an unpalatalized consonant, while front vowels and palatalized consonants are followed by palatalized consonants. Examples of alternating (palatalized /unpalatalized) forms:

- nominative plural marker *-t/-t’*: *tumo* ‘oak’ – *tumot*, but *umar* ‘apple’ – *umar’*;
- first person plural present tense verbal ending *-tano/-tano*: *jarstatano* ‘we eat’, but *simtano* ‘we drink’;
- diminutive suffix *-ne/-ne*: *tolne* ‘little wind’, *keńne* ‘little hand’.

However, there are some morphemes in which such assimilation does not take place and only one variant of the morpheme exists, e.g.:

- definiteness marker *-ś*: *iejteś* ‘the girl’, *tumoś* ‘the oak’;
- verbal participle *-ź*: *moraz* ‘singing’, *tejeź* ‘doing’;
- illative, inessive, and elative suffixes *-s, -se, -ste*: *śedejs, śedejse, śedejste* (*śedej* ‘heart’).

### Effects of Voicing

The voiced consonants *b, d, đ, g, z, ź* and *ž* become voiceless at morpheme boundaries if they are followed by a voiceless consonant, e.g. nominative plural *-t/-t’*: *vaz* ‘calf’ – *vazt* (> *vast*), *keđ* ‘hand’ – *keđt* (> *keđt’*) or first person plural present tense *-tano/-tano*: *sodoms* ‘to bind, tie’ – *sodtano* (> *sottano*). In compound words, progressive assimilation takes place at the word boundary – a preceding voiced consonant leads to the voicing of a word-initial voiceless consonant, e.g. *surbrá* ‘fingertip’ (*sur* ‘finger’ + *prá* ‘head’), *kolmońgemeń* (*kolmo* ‘three’ + *-ń* genitive + *kemeń* ‘ten’) ‘thirty’.

The form of the emphatic particle *-gak /-kak /-jak* used to add emphasis to the word it is attached to, as well as to convey the meaning of “too, also”, is dependent on the sound preceding it. The form *-gak* follows a voiced consonant, *-kak* follows a voiceless consonant, and *-jak* follows a vowel:

*Mon kortan erzaks.* I speak Erzya.

*Mongak kortan erzaks.* I, too, speak Erzya.

*Mon kortan eržakskak.* I speak Erzya, too (in addition to other languages).  
*Kortijak eržaks.* He even speaks Erzya (not only reads or writes).

Another assimilatory phenomenon takes place with the fricatives *s* and *ś*, which are pronounced as affricates *c* and *ć* respectively when following the consonants *l*, *l̄*, *n*, *n̄*, *r*, and *ř*, e.g. *jarsams* > *jarcams* ‘to eat’.

## Vowel Elision

The addition of case suffixes and verbal endings to the stem sometimes causes the elision of a vowel at the end of the stem. When following a consonant, the combinations *-go- /-ge-*, *-ko- /-ke-*, *-do- /-de-*, *-to- /-te-*, and *-mo- /-me-* lose their vowel before the following endings:

- nominative plural *-t/-t̄*: *pando* ‘mountain’ – *pandt*, *śélme* ‘eye’ – *śélm̄t̄*;
- local case endings *-s*, *-so/-se*, *-sto/-ste*: *śélme* – *śélm̄s*, *śélm̄se*, *śélm̄ste*;
- imperative ending *-t/-t̄*: *maksoms* ‘to give’ – *makst*, also: *sajems* ‘to take’ – *sajt̄*;
- 3<sup>rd</sup> person singular past tense *-ś*: *śormadoms* ‘to write’ – *śormadś*.

Vowel elision also takes place in compound words, when a word beginning with a vowel is joined to a word ending in a vowel: *kudazor* (< *kudo* ‘house, home’ + *azor* ‘owner’) ‘head of the family, landlord, proprietor’; *urva* (< *ur̄e* ‘slave’ + *ava* ‘woman’) ‘daughter-in-law’.

## Vowel Epenthesis

Epenthetic vowels may appear at morpheme boundaries between two consonants, helping to differentiate words and word forms, for example:

- *keđ* ‘hand’: *keđet̄* ‘your hand(s)’, possessive declension; but *keđt̄* ‘hands’, indefinite declension;
- *kal* ‘fish’: *kaloś* ‘the fish’; but *paloms* ‘to burn’: *palś* ‘it burned.’

At word boundaries, an epenthetic *j* may appear between two *a*’s, e.g. *a ašt’ems* > */ajašt’ems/* ‘not to stand /stay in place’.

## Stress

In Erzya, the acoustic properties of stress are relatively weakly expressed, and the place of the stressed syllable in a word may vary. In polysyllabic words, additional stress appears. Typically, stress falls on odd-numbered syllables; for example, in the word *śeđejsenze* ‘in his/her heart’, the first and third syllables receive stress. Sentence rhythm may cause the stress to move to even-numbered syllables. When a word is preceded by a one-syllable word, for example an exclamation, the stress is moved to the second (and fourth) syllable: *vaj, śeđejsenze* ‘oh, in his/her heart’.

Changes in the position of stress do not bring about changes in the meaning of a word. In loan words, there is a clear tendency to place the stress on odd-numbered syllables. In Russian loans such as *vedra* < ведро ‘bucket’, *turba* < труба ‘chimney’, the stress is on the first syllable, even though in Russian it falls on the second syllable. Vowel reduction in unstressed syllables, a very common phenomenon in many languages (including English), does not take place in Erzya; that is, vowels are pronounced the same in unstressed syllables as they are in stressed syllables. Some mixed dialects, however, display the phenomenon of unstressed vowel reduction.

**Exercise 1.** Listen and repeat. Audio: DS0169-01 ([www.murre.ut.ee/arhiv/naita.php?t=audio\\_trakk&id=4723](http://www.murre.ut.ee/arhiv/naita.php?t=audio_trakk&id=4723))

- vowels and consonants

<i>i</i>	<i>miñ</i> ‘we’, <i>tiñ</i> ‘you (pl.)’
<i>e</i>	<i>še</i> ‘it’, <i>señ</i> ‘blue’
<i>i – e</i>	<i>kije</i> ‘who’, <i>kize</i> ‘summer’
<i>u</i>	<i>kuz</i> ‘spruce’, <i>sur</i> ‘finger’
<i>o</i>	<i>mon</i> ‘I’, <i>ton</i> ‘you (sg.)’
<i>u – o</i>	<i>kudo</i> ‘home, house’, <i>tumo</i> ‘oak’
<i>a</i>	<i>ava</i> ‘woman, mother’, <i>pía</i> ‘head’
<i>i – a</i>	<i>išta</i> ‘so, thus’, <i>viška</i> ‘small’
<i>e – a</i>	<i>téta</i> ‘father’, <i>vetáms</i> ‘to pull’
<i>u – a</i>	<i>umar’</i> ‘apple’, <i>urva</i> ‘daughter-in-law’
<i>o – a</i>	<i>lomañ</i> ‘person’, <i>jovtams</i> ‘to say’

<i>p b</i>	<i>s z</i>	<i>c ć</i>	<i>r í</i>
<i>t d</i>	<i>ś ź</i>	<i>č</i>	<i>l ł</i>
<i>í á</i>	<i>f v (w)</i>	<i>š ž</i>	<i>n ó</i>
<i>k g</i>	<i>h</i>		<i>m</i>
			<i>j</i>

- palatalized /non-palatalized consonants

*kal* ‘fish’ – *kał* ‘willow’  
*šeske* ‘at once’ – *šeške* ‘mosquito’  
*mon* ‘I’ – *moñ* ‘my, mine’  
*stams* ‘to sew’ – *štams* ‘to get up’  
*pize* ‘nest’ – *piže* ‘it’s raining’  
*señ* ‘blue’ – *šeñ* ‘its (genitive)’  
*praś* ‘it dropped’ – *pías* ‘into the head’

- voiced /voiceless consonants

*koda* ‘how’ – *kota* ‘shoe’  
*užo* ‘wait!’ – *ušo* ‘outside, air’  
*teze* ‘to here, hither’ – *teše* ‘here’  
*ved’* ‘water’ – *veť* ‘at night’  
*saž* ‘come (past participle)’ – *saś* ‘he /she came’  
*lovož* ‘read (past participle)’ – *lovoś* ‘the snow’

- fricatives and affricates:

*či* ‘sun’, *čize* ‘sun (possessive declension)’  
*kši* ‘bread’, *kšni* ‘iron’, *ušo* ‘outside, air’  
*užo* ‘wait!’, *ožo* ‘yellow’, *inže* ‘guest’, *piže* ‘green’  
*kize* ‘summer’, *vaz* ‘calf’, *pize* ‘nest’, *kuz* ‘spruce’

**Exercise 2.** Listen and repeat (audio: DS0169-02, 03, 04, 05, 06, 07)

- vowel harmony ([Audio: www.murre.ut.ee/arhiv/naita.php?t=audio\\_trakk&id=4724](http://www.murre.ut.ee/arhiv/naita.php?t=audio_trakk&id=4724))

*piřese, -ste* ‘in /out of the garden’, *pizesenze* ‘in its nest’  
*kudoso, -sto* ‘at /from home /house’, *kudosoŋzo* ‘in his /her house /home’  
*piřeva* ‘through the garden’, *modava* ‘across the land’  
*muškems* ‘to wash (clothes)’, *aštéms* ‘to stand, stay in place’

- consonant clusters ([Audio: www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv/naita.php?t=audio\\_trakk&id=4725](http://www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv/naita.php?t=audio_trakk&id=4725))  
*p̄ra*, *p̄ra* ‘head’, *p̄ra*ka ‘patty’  
*kravtoms* ‘to drive away, stave off’  
*k̄ši* ‘bread’, *k̄š̄ni* ‘iron’, *mor̄šek̄š̄nems* ‘to sing’  
*kstij*, *kstij* ‘strawberry’, *k̄snav* ‘pea’, *sok̄sso* ‘in the skis’  
*lomaññeñ* ‘to /for a person’
- variation of palatalized and non-palatalized consonants in suffixes  
[Audio: www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv/naita.php?t=audio\\_trakk&id=4726](http://www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv/naita.php?t=audio_trakk&id=4726)  
*tumo* ‘oak’ – *tumot* ‘oaks’  
*umar̄* ‘apple’ – *umar̄i* ‘apples’  
*jarsatano* ‘we eat’ – *šim̄tano* ‘we drink’  
*tolne* ‘little fire’ – *keđ̄ne* ‘little hand’
- variation of consonants at morpheme boundary  
[Audio: www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv/naita.php?t=audio\\_trakk&id=4727](http://www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv/naita.php?t=audio_trakk&id=4727)  
*vaz* ‘calf’ – *vazt* (> *vast*), *keđ* ‘hand’ – *keđi* (> *keđi*)  
*sodoms* ‘to bind, tie’ – *sodtano* (> *sottano*)  
*surbr̄a* ‘fingertip’ (*sur* ‘finger’ + *p̄ra* ‘head’)  
*kolmoñgemeñ* (*kolmo* + *-ñ* genitive + *kemeñ*) ‘thirty’  
*kals* > *kalc* ‘(to go) fishing’, *jarsams* > *jarcams* ‘to eat’
- vowel elision ([Audio: www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv/naita.php?t=audio\\_trakk&id=4728](http://www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv/naita.php?t=audio_trakk&id=4728))  
*pando* ‘mountain’ – *pand̄t* ‘mountains’  
*šelme* ‘eye’ – *šel̄m̄i* (> *šel̄i*) ‘eyes’, *šel̄ms*, *šel̄mse*, *šel̄mste* ‘into, in, out of the eye’  
*maksoms* ‘give’ – *makst* ‘give (imperative)’  
*šormadoms* ‘write’ – *šormad̄s* ‘wrote’  
*kudazor* (< *kudo* ‘home, house’ + *azor* ‘owner’)  
*ur̄va* ‘daughter-in-law’ (< *ur̄e* ‘slave’ + *ava* ‘woman’)
- stress ([Audio: www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv/naita.php?t=audio\\_trakk&id=4729](http://www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv/naita.php?t=audio_trakk&id=4729))  
*šedejsenze* ‘in his/her heart’  
*vaj*, *šedejsenze* ‘oh, in his/her heart’

**Exercise 3.** Add the proper plural ending (-t/-i) to each of the following nouns:

	-t	-i		-t	-i		-t	-i
<i>čora-</i>			<i>kuz-</i>			<i>sazor-</i>		
<i>kal-</i>			<i>lepe-</i>			<i>šedej-</i>		
<i>keđ-</i>			<i>lomañ-</i>			<i>tejteř-</i>		
<i>keł-</i>			<i>pešte-</i>			<i>tumo-</i>		
<i>kudo-</i>			<i>řivež-</i>			<i>vaz-</i>		

**Exercise 4.** Add the proper emphatic particle (-gak /-kak /-jak) to each of the following nouns:

	-gak	-kak	-jak		-gak	-kak	-jak
<i>ava-</i>				<i>lov-</i>			
<i>jarmak-</i>				<i>makso-</i>			
<i>keł-</i>				<i>pešte-</i>			
<i>kudo-</i>				<i>šedej-</i>			
<i>k̄ši-</i>				<i>šok̄s-</i>			
<i>tešte-</i>				<i>val-</i>			
<i>veđ-</i>				<i>vele-</i>			
<i>veř-</i>				<i>řivež-</i>			
<i>tumot</i>				<i>lomañi</i>			

## VOCABULARY *Valks*

<i>a</i>	no, not	<i>paro, -iñe</i>	good
<i>ašiemš</i>	to stand in place	<i>pe</i>	end
<i>ava</i>	woman, mother	<i>peļķs</i>	part
<i>či</i>	day, sun	<i>piře</i>	garden
<i>erža</i>	Erzya	<i>pize</i>	nest
<i>ikeļķs</i>	front part	<i>piže</i>	to rain
<i>inže</i>	guest	<i>piže</i>	green
<i>jakams</i>	to go, visit	<i>prā, piā</i>	head
<i>jarsams</i>	to eat	<i>prāka</i>	patty
<i>jovtams</i>	to say, tell	<i>prams</i>	to drop, fall
<i>jur</i>	root	<i>sajems</i>	to take
<i>kal</i>	fish	<i>sams</i>	to come
<i>keđ</i>	hand	<i>salmuks</i>	needle
<i>keļ</i>	language, tongue	<i>sepe</i>	gall
<i>kije</i>	who	<i>siñ</i>	they
<i>kise</i>	for	<i>siře</i>	old
<i>kize</i>	summer	<i>sivelī</i>	meat
<i>koda</i>	how	<i>sodoms</i>	to bind, tie
<i>kolmoņgemeñ</i>	thirty	<i>soks</i>	ski
<i>kota</i>	shoe	<i>stams</i>	to sew
<i>kov</i>	moon, month	<i>sur</i>	finger
<i>kovol</i>	cloud	<i>surbāra</i>	fingertip
<i>kravtoms</i>	to drive away, stave off	<i>šedej</i>	heart
<i>ksnav</i>	pea	<i>šelme</i>	eye
<i>kstij, kistij</i>	strawberry	<i>šeske</i>	at once
<i>kši</i>	bread	<i>šeške</i>	mosquito
<i>kšņi</i>	iron	<i>šimems</i>	to drink
<i>kudazor</i>	head of the family, landlord, proprietor	<i>šoks</i>	autumn
<i>kudikelķs</i>	entryway	<i>šormadoms</i>	to write
<i>kudo</i>	home, house	<i>štams</i>	to get up
<i>kuz</i>	spruce	<i>tiñ</i>	your (pl.)
<i>lomañ</i>	person	<i>tol</i>	fire
<i>lov</i>	snow	<i>tumo</i>	oak
<i>lovo/ms, -ž</i>	to read, -ing	<i>tejemš</i>	to do
<i>magaziñ</i>	shop	<i>tejteř</i>	girl, daughter
<i>maksoms</i>	to give	<i>umař</i>	apple
<i>mijems</i>	to sell	<i>uře</i>	slave
<i>moda</i>	land, earth	<i>uřva</i>	daughter-in-law
<i>mon</i>	I	<i>ušo</i>	air, outside
<i>moñ</i>	my, mine	<i>užo</i>	wait!
<i>morams</i>	to sing	<i>vajams</i>	to sink, drown
<i>moršekšņems</i>	to sing (repeatedly)	<i>vaj</i>	oh
<i>muškems</i>	to do laundry	<i>vaz</i>	calf
<i>narmuñ/-o-</i>	bird	<i>ve</i>	night
<i>ožo</i>	yellow	<i>veí</i>	at night
<i>paloms</i>	to burn (be burned up)	<i>vele</i>	village
<i>pando</i>	mountain, hill	<i>viškiñe</i>	small

## OVERVIEW OF WORD STOCK AND WORD FORMATION

### Word Stock

The Finno-Ugric heritage of Erzya is visible in its vocabulary (having preserved a number of old Finno-Ugric roots) as well as its phonology, morphology, and syntax. However, Erzya also contains a great many loan words from various times and sources: old Indo-European borrowings (*kšī* ‘bread’, *kšni* ‘iron’, *paz* ‘god’, *tarvaz* ‘sickle’), Turkic borrowings (*jarmak* ‘money’, *alaša* ‘horse’), and Russian borrowings (*vedra* ‘bucket’, *kolća* ‘ring’, *šeřada* ‘Wednesday’, *kapsta* ‘cabbage’).

Along with the growth of Erzya-Russian bilingualism in the second half of the 20<sup>th</sup> century, code-switching phenomena (the use of Russian words, morphology and sentence structure in place of their Erzya equivalents) began to appear in Erzya. Recently there has been an effort to restore the original structure of Erzya, primarily in the written language. Attempts are being made to revive forgotten Erzya words and to create new terminology based on Erzya roots. Many of the Erzya words are phonetically quite similar to their Finnic counterparts.

**Exercise 5.** Match the following Erzya words with their Finnish, Estonian, and Mari equivalents:

*kolmo, šelme, niile, vele, san, sedej, kemeň, šišem, ej, molems, kavkso, kal, koto*

Estonian	Finnish	Erzya	Mari
<i>süida, südam-</i>	<i>sydän, sydäm-</i>		<i>šüm</i>
<i>soon</i>	<i>suoni</i>		<i>šön</i>
<i>minna, min-</i>	<i>mennä, men-</i>		<i>mije-</i>
<i>kala</i>	<i>kala</i>		<i>kol</i>
<i>jää</i>	<i>jää</i>		<i>ij</i>
<i>silm</i>	<i>silmä</i>		<i>šinča</i>
<i>neli</i>	<i>neljä</i>		<i>nələt</i>
<i>kolm</i>	<i>kolme</i>		<i>kumət</i>
<i>viis</i>	<i>viisi</i>		<i>wizət</i>
<i>kuus</i>	<i>kuusi</i>		<i>kuđət</i>
<i>seitse</i>	<i>seitsemän</i>		<i>šəmət</i>
<i>kaheksa</i>	<i>kahdeksan</i>		<i>kandaš(e)</i>
<i>kümne</i>	<i>kymmenen</i>		<i>lu</i>

### Word Formation

The principal means of word formation in Erzya are derivation and compounding, as well as the use of paired words. In the case of derivation, a suffix is added to the word stem, e.g. *ašo* ‘white’, *ašine* ‘white (diminutive)’, *ašolgadoms* ‘to become white’. Some derivational suffixes are formed from morphological markers, e.g. *valks* ‘dictionary’ (*val* ‘word’ + *-ks* translative case suffix), *eramo* ‘life’ (*era-* ‘to live’ + *-mo* verbal noun suffix).

Compound words are formed from more than one stem. The meaning of compound words may or may not be equivalent to the sum of their parts, e.g. *vedgev* ‘mill’ (*ved* ‘water’ + *kev* ‘stone’), *šelved* ‘tear’ (*šelme* ‘eye’ + *ved* ‘water’). A compound word constitutes one unit both orthographically and phonetically (through stress patterns).

Some words used in compounds are roughly equivalent to derivational suffixes. Such words include *či* ‘day, sun’ (*paro či* ‘good day’) – *-či* (*paroči* ‘goodness’, *šumbrači* ‘health’, *teči* ‘today’); *peł* ‘side, half’ (*peł či* ‘half a day’) – *-peł* (*lovnomapeł* ‘something to read’).



Paired words, i.e. words that appear together as one lexical unit, generally appear in the same morphological form, e.g. *eřams-ařtems* ‘live-be’, *jarsams-tejems* ‘eat-do’, *tej-tov* ‘here and there’, *řetát-ćorat* ‘father and son together’, *avat-tejterř* ‘mother and daughter together’, *řelat-sazort* ‘brother and sister together’ (note that paired nouns receive the plural ending *-t/-ř*, even though each part of the pair is singular in meaning).

### VOCABULARY *Valks*

<i>alařa</i>	horse	<i>ovto</i>	bear
<i>ař/o, -iře</i>	white	<i>paročř</i>	goodness
<i>ařolġadoms</i>	to become white	<i>paz</i>	god
<i>avat-tejterř</i>	mother and daughter	<i>peř</i>	side, half
<i>ćora</i>	man, boy	<i>peřte</i>	nut
<i>ćora-lomař</i>	male person	<i>piře</i>	dog
<i>ći</i>	day, sun	<i>piřol</i>	rowan
<i>ej</i>	ice	<i>pursoz</i>	piglet
<i>eřamo</i>	life	<i>řiveř</i>	fox
<i>eřams</i>	to live	<i>san</i>	vein
<i>-ġak /-kak /-ġak</i>	too, also	<i>sazor</i>	sister
<i>ġarmak</i>	money	<i>seř</i>	blue
<i>ġur</i>	root	<i>řejeř</i>	hedgehog
<i>kavkso</i>	eight	<i>řeġe</i>	saliva, spit
<i>keř</i>	language, tongue	<i>řeřved</i>	teardrop
<i>kemeř</i>	ten	<i>řišem</i>	seven
<i>keřeře</i>	elbow	<i>řulmo</i>	knot
<i>kenře</i>	(finger)nail	<i>řuro</i>	horn
<i>kev</i>	stone	<i>řumbraći</i>	health
<i>koda</i>	how	<i>tarvaz</i>	sickle
<i>kolmo</i>	three	<i>tonavtoms</i>	to teach
<i>kolmořġemeř</i>	thirty	<i>řetát-ćorat</i>	father and son
<i>koto</i>	six	<i>řeći</i>	today
<i>kov</i>	moon, month	<i>tej-tov</i>	here and there
<i>řelat-sazort</i>	brother and sister	<i>řele</i>	winter
<i>řepe</i>	alder	<i>řeře</i>	star
<i>lovnoms</i>	to read	<i>ukřtor</i>	maple
<i>makso</i>	liver	<i>uro</i>	squirrel
<i>meř</i>	honey	<i>uroz</i>	orphan
<i>meře</i>	what	<i>val(ks)</i>	word (dictionary)
<i>mořems</i>	to go	<i>ve</i>	night
<i>nal</i>	arrow	<i>ved</i>	water
<i>ři</i>	woman, wife	<i>vedġev</i>	mill
<i>řiře</i>	four	<i>veř</i>	blood
<i>olġo</i>	straw	<i>veře</i>	five

## Unit 1 *Vašeńće pelks*

### GRAMMAR

#### Nouns and Adjectives

Nouns and adjectives may end in either a vowel or a consonant, e.g.: *kudo* ‘house, home’, *kal* ‘fish’; *ašo* ‘white’, *seń* ‘blue’, *mazij* ‘beautiful’. Adjectives may be formed from nouns, by adding a derivational suffix (e.g. *-j*, *-v*): *pińnej* ‘expensive’ (*pińne* ‘price’), *salov* ‘salty’ (< *sal* ‘salt’). Nouns can be formed by adding suffixes to adjectives and verb forms, e.g. *mazijka* (< *mazij* ‘beautiful’) ‘decoration, picture’, *paroči* (< *paro* ‘good’) ‘goodness’, *šumbrači* (< *šumbra* ‘healthy’) ‘health’, *lovnomapel* (< *lovnoma* ‘reading’) ‘something to read’.

#### The Plural Marker

The plural is marked by the suffix *-t/-í*. The variant *-t* appears after back vowels and non-palatalized consonants, e.g.: *kudot* ‘houses, homes’, *ašot* ‘white (pl.)’; *-í* appears after palatalized consonants and front vowels, as well as the consonants *j* and *m*: *velet* ‘villages’, *virít* ‘forests’, *šelmt* (> *šelít*) ‘eyes’, *seńt* ‘blue (pl.)’, *kelmt* (> *kelít*) ‘cold (pl.)’.

Stem-final vowels (in some words also consonants) may be subject to elision before the plural ending. The vowels *o* and *e* are lost when following a consonant cluster ending in *t*, *d*, *k*, or *g* (sometimes also *p*, *b*, *m*, *ž*, and *č*): *pando* – *pandt* ‘mountains’, *šelme* – *šelmt* (> *šelít*) ‘eyes’, *kelme* – *kelmt* (> *kelít*) ‘cold (pl.)’.

The plural marker *-t/-í* appears in both elements of pair words such as *teiat-avat* ‘mother and father, parents, mothers and fathers’, *teiat-čorat* ‘father and son together’, *Mařat-Mikołít* ‘Mařa and Mikoł’.

Attributive adjectives do not agree with their head word:

*ašo kilej* ‘white birch’ – *ašo kilejít* ‘white birches’.  
*od lomań* ‘young person’ – *od lomańt* ‘young people’,  
*mazij ava* ‘beautiful woman’ – *mazij avat* ‘beautiful women’.

#### Verbs: the *ms*- Infinitive and Present Tense Conjugation

The base form of Erzya verbs is a stem ending in the vowel *a*, *o* or *e*; infinitive and personal endings are added to this stem. Below, examples of the *ms*- infinitive are given (the *mo-/me*- infinitive will be introduced in Unit 5).

The *ms*- infinitive form:

*kortams* ‘to speak, talk’ (*kortams erzań*, *anglań kelše* ‘to speak Erzya, English’; also: *kortams eržaks*, *anglaks*);  
*lovoms* ‘to count, calculate’ (*lovoms jarmak* ‘to count money’);  
*lovnoms* ‘to read’ (*lovnoms anglań*, *ružoń kelše* ‘to read English, Russian’);  
*ńejems* ‘to see’ (*ńejems malasto* ‘to see nearby’);  
*tonavńems* ‘to study, learn’ (*tonavńems parosto* ‘to study well’).

The Erzya present tense corresponds to both the English simple present (‘I go’) and present continuous (‘I am going’). In Erzya, future time is also expressed through the use of present tense forms.

Present/future tense forms together with corresponding personal pronouns (*mon* I, *ton* you (sg.), *son* he /she, *miń* we, *tiń* you (pl.), *siń* they):

a) *kortams, lovoms, nejems*:

<i>mon</i>	<i>kort-a-n</i>	<i>lov-a-n</i>	<i>nej-a-n</i>
<i>ton</i>	<i>kort-a-t</i>	<i>lov-a-t</i>	<i>nej-a-t</i>
<i>son</i>	<i>kort-i</i>	<i>lov-i</i>	<i>nej-i</i>
<i>miń</i>	<i>kort-a-tano</i>	<i>lov-tano</i>	<i>nej(j)-tano</i>
<i>tiń</i>	<i>kort-a-tado</i>	<i>lov-tado</i>	<i>nej(j)-tado</i>
<i>siń</i>	<i>kort-i-t</i>	<i>lov-i-t</i>	<i>nej(j)-i-t</i>

b) *lovnoms, tonavtńems*:

<i>mon</i>	<i>lovn-a-n</i>	<i>tonavtń-a-n</i>
<i>ton</i>	<i>lovn-a-t</i>	<i>tonavtń-a-t</i>
<i>son</i>	<i>lovn-i</i>	<i>tonavtń-i</i>
<i>miń</i>	<i>lovn-o-tano</i>	<i>tonavtń-e-tano</i>
<i>tiń</i>	<i>lovn-o-tado</i>	<i>tonavtń-e-tado</i>
<i>siń</i>	<i>lovn-i-t</i>	<i>tonavtń-i-t</i>

Vowel elision is widespread in Erzya verb conjugation. The stem vowels *-o* and *-e* are typically lost in the first and second person plural (*lov-tano, lov-tado; nej-tano, nej-tado*), but: *korta-tano, korta-tado*), although they remain in verbs containing a derivational suffix, e.g. *-n/-ń* (*lovno-tano, tonavtńe-tano*). In the first and second person singular, the personal endings (*-n, -t*) are preceded by the vowel *a* in all the three types of verbs. In the third person singular and plural, the stem vowel is always replaced by *i*.

Negative forms are built by combining the negative particle *a* with the affirmative verb form, conjugated for person and number, e.g.: *mon a kortan* ‘I don’t speak’ (also in the *ms*-infinitive form: *a kortams* ‘not to speak, talk’).

Present / future tense: negative verb forms

<i>mon</i>	<i>a kortan</i>		I	don’t speak	
<i>ton</i>	<i>a kortat</i>		you (sing).	don’t speak	
<i>son</i>	<i>a korti</i>	<i>erzaks</i>	he/she	doesn’t speak	Erzya
<i>miń</i>	<i>a kortatano</i>		we	don’t speak	
<i>tiń</i>	<i>a kortatado</i>		you (pl.)	don’t speak	
<i>siń</i>	<i>a kortiń</i>		they	don’t speak	

### Forms and Use of the Verb *uńems* ‘to be’

The present tense forms of the verb *uńems* ‘to be’ (*uńan, uńat, uńi, uńtano, uńtado, uńiń*) are not used in the meaning of ‘I am’, ‘you are’, ‘he is’, etc. Rather, they are used to talk about the future: *uńan toso kotosto* ‘I’ll be there at six’. These forms are negated with the particle *a*: *a uńan, a uńat, a uńi, a uńtano, a uńtado, a uńiń*, e.g.: *Miń a uńtano še škasto kudoso*. ‘We won’t be home then’.

The third person singular and plural forms *uńi* and *uńiń* are, however, used in existential sentences (equivalent to English ‘there is’, ‘there are’). Nouns in existential sentences may appear in the indefinite, definite, or possessive declension (see units 2, 4, 6): e.g. *uńi ška /škaś /škam* (*ška* ‘time’: indefinite, definite, possessive declension) ‘there is time’, *uńi škam* ‘I have time’; *uńiń jalgat /jalgatńe /jalgan* (*jalga* ‘friend’: indefinite, definite, possessive declension, plural; *uńiń jalgan* ‘I have friends’). Negative existential sentences are formed with the word *araś* (plural *araśń*) ‘there isn’t /aren’t, don’t /doesn’t have’, e.g.: *ška araś* ‘there isn’t time’, *škaś araś* ‘there’s no time’, *škam araś* ‘I don’t have time’.

The meanings ‘I am’, ‘you are’, ‘he is’, and so on are expressed in Erzya by adding the appropriate personal ending to the predicate noun or adjective (also some other word classes).

Noun stem + *ulems* personal ending (using the noun *lomań* ‘person’)

<i>lomańan</i> <	<i>lomań</i> + ( <i>ul-</i> )- <i>an</i>	I am a person
<i>lomańat</i> <	<i>lomań</i> + ( <i>ul-</i> )- <i>at</i>	you are a person
<i>lomań</i> <	<i>lomań</i> + (- <i>Ø-</i> )	he/she is a person
<i>lomańtano</i> <	<i>lomańt</i> + ( <i>ul-</i> )- <i>tano</i>	We are people
<i>lomańtado</i> <	<i>lomańt</i> + ( <i>ul-</i> )- <i>tado</i>	you are people
<i>lomańt</i> <	<i>lomańt</i> + (- <i>Ø-</i> )	they are people

Adjective stem + *ulems* personal ending (using the adjective *od* ‘young’)

<i>odan</i> <	<i>od</i> + ( <i>ul-</i> )- <i>an</i>	I am young
<i>odat</i> <	<i>od</i> + ( <i>ul-</i> )- <i>at</i>	you (sg.) are young
<i>od</i> <	<i>od</i> + (- <i>Ø-</i> )	he/she is young
<i>odtano</i> <	<i>odt</i> + ( <i>ul-</i> )- <i>tano</i>	we are young
<i>odtado</i> <	<i>odt</i> + ( <i>ul-</i> )- <i>tado</i>	you (pl.) are young
<i>odt</i> <	<i>odt</i> + (- <i>Ø-</i> )	they are young

In predicative expressions consisting of both an adjective and a noun, only the noun takes the personal ending, e.g. *od lomańan* ‘I am a young person’, *od lomańtano* ‘we are young persons’ (but: *siń odt* ‘they are young’).

The above forms are negated by adding the particle *a*: *Mon a odan*. *Miń a odtano*. In addition to the particle *a*, there is also the negative word *avól*, a compound formed from the particle *a* and the verb *ulems*: (*a* + *ul-*). In some dialects, *avól* may be pronounced as *awól* or *awul*.

Use of the negation words *a*, *avól*, *araś*:

1. *Mon a estonan, mon erźan*. I’m not Estonian, I am Erzya.
2. *Mon avól estonan, mon erźan*. I’m not Estonian, but rather Erzya.
3. *Ton studentat?* – *Avól*. Are you a student? – No.
4. *Uli škat?* – *Araś*. Do you have time? – No.

In general, the difference between the three negation words can be summed up as follows:

- The particle *a* is used to negate a verb form.
- *Avól* is used for contrastive negation (‘not X, but Y’).
- *Araś* is used for existential negation, denying the presence or existence of something.

**Exercise 1.** Listen and repeat (audio: DS0169-08, 09, 10)

- *kortams erźań kełse, kortams erźaks*  
*kortams estonoń kełse, kortams estonoks*  
*lovoms jarmak*  
*lovnoms anglań, ruzoń kełse*  
*ńejems malasto*  
*tonavtńems parosto*  
(Audio: [www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv/naita.php?t=audio\\_trakk&id=4730](http://www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv/naita.php?t=audio_trakk&id=4730))
- *Mon kortan finneks.*  
*Son korti vengraks.*  
*Ton kortat estonoks?*  
*Tiń a kortatado erźaks?*  
(Audio: [www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv/naita.php?t=audio\\_trakk&id=4731](http://www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv/naita.php?t=audio_trakk&id=4731))

- *Son a eston, son finn.*  
*Mon avoĺ estonan, mon finnan.*  
*Mon lomańan. Mon od lomańan.*  
*Tiń odtado. Tiń od lomańtado.*  
*Mon a odan. Mon avoĺ od lomańan.*  
[\[Audio: www.murre.ut.ee/arhiv/naita.php?t=audio\\_trakk&id=4732\]](http://www.murre.ut.ee/arhiv/naita.php?t=audio_trakk&id=4732)

**Exercise 2.** Add the appropriate plural suffix (-t/-t) to the color words *ašo* ‘white’, *raužo* ‘black’, *jaksíteře* ‘red’, *tuža* ‘brown’, *ožo* ‘yellow’, *seń* ‘blue’, *piže* ‘green’, as in the collocation *Siń ašot /... etc.* ‘They are white /black /red /brown / yellow / blue /green’.

**Exercise 3.** Form collocations by combining the adjectives in the left-hand column with suitable nouns from the box, e.g. *paro lomań*.

<i>paro</i>	<i>alaša</i>	<i>pakša</i>	<i>keď</i>	<i>tejtér</i>
<i>lembe</i>	<i>ava</i>	<i>paća</i>	<i>kudo</i>	<i>veĺe</i>
<i>ašo</i>	<i>ćora</i>	<i>piže</i>	<i>lomań</i>	<i>šeĺmí</i>
<i>seń</i>	<i>ćokšńe</i>	<i>śedej</i>	<i>kal</i>	<i>mastor</i>
<i>raužo</i>	<i>ítešte</i>	<i>kši</i>	<i>moda</i>	<i>kšńi</i>

**Exercise 4.** Conjugate the verbs *eřams* ‘to live’, *ašítems* ‘to be located, stay’, and *ńejems* ‘to see’ in the present tense (both affirmative and negative).

**Exercise 5.** Use the forms of the verb *uĺems* with the words *eston*, *finn*, *ńemeć*, *vengra*, *ruz*. Example: *Mon estonan, avoĺ vengran.*

**Exercise 6.** Fill in the blanks:

- *Kij...t? – Studenta...*
- *To... erzat? – Avoĺ, m...n estonan. Ton erzat?*
- *Avoĺ, mon finn...n.*
- *Ki...e íe? – V...ngra.*
- *S...n student? – Student.*

**Exercise 7.** Join the forms on the right with the corresponding subject pronoun on the left:

<i>miń</i>	<i>studentan</i>
<i>mon</i>	<i>studentt</i>
<i>ton</i>	<i>studenttado</i>
<i>siń</i>	<i>studenttano</i>
<i>son</i>	<i>student</i>
<i>tiń</i>	<i>studentat</i>

## CONVERSATION AND READING Kortamo – lovnoma

### Šumbrat! Hello!

<i>šumbrat!</i>	Hello! (to one person)
<i>šumbratado!</i>	Hello! (to more than one person)
<i>koda erät?</i>	How are you (sg.)?
<i>koda eratado?</i>	How are you (pl.)?
<i>parosto</i>	well
<i>sastiñeste</i>	so-so ( <i>lit.</i> slowly)
<i>šuk-prá</i>	thank you
<i>moñ íemem Oía</i>	My name is Oía
<i>koda íemet?</i>	What is your name?
<i>ñejemazonok!</i>	See you later!
<i>paro či!</i>	Have a nice day!
<i>šumbrači!</i>	Take care ( <i>lit.</i> <i>health</i> )!
<i>eršik! eršide!</i>	Live well!

**Exercise 8.** Listen and repeat. Audio: DS0169-11 ([www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv/naita.php?t=audio\\_trakk&id=4732](http://www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv/naita.php?t=audio_trakk&id=4732))

**Exercise 9.** Use the following expressions to introduce yourself and get to know your classmates:  
*Šumbrat! Moñ íemem ... . Mon eržan. Ton studentat? Ñejemazonok! Koda erät? Mongak. Kijat ton? Studentan. Šumbrači! Sastiñeste.*

#### TEXT 1

*Te – auditořija. Ñetñe – studentt: kolmo fejterí, kolmo čorat. Merja finn, Pekkajak finn. Aniko vengra. Te – Vaša, son ruz. Toomas eston. Anujak eston.*

- *Te kije? – Professor Tamm.*
- *Professor Tamm eston? – Eston.*
- *Anikojak eston? – Avoĺ. Son vengra.*
- *Vaša ruz? – Ruz.*
- *Merjat-Pekkat finnt? – Finnt.*
- *Anujak finn? – Avoĺ. Son eston.*
- *Siñ studentt? – Studentt.*
- *Tongak studentat? – Mongak studentan.*
- *Koda íemet? – Kiřo.*
- *Moñ íemem Toomas.*
- *Ton eržat? – Avoĺ. Mon estonan.*
- *Koso Anu? – Son araš.*
- *Kosot Šomat-Mikoĺi? – Siňgak araš.*

**Exercise 10.** Listen and repeat. Audio: DS0169-12 ([www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv/naita.php?t=audio\\_trakk&id=4734](http://www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv/naita.php?t=audio_trakk&id=4734))

#### TEXT 2

*Professor Tamm korti estonoks, ruzoks, eržaks, finneks, vengraks. Son korti anglañ kelšejak. Aniko korti vengraks, lovni estonoñ, ruzoñ kelše, tonavtni eržan kel. Merjat-Pekkat korti finneks, ruzoks,*

*lovní vengraň kělse. Siňgak tonavtnít erzań kěl. Vaša korti ruzoks, estonoks, lovní vengraň kělse, tonavtni anglaň kěl. Evat-Toomast estont. Siň korti parosto anglaň, ruzoň kělse, tonavtnít erzań kěl. Erzań kělse siň a korti.*

**Exercise 11.** Listen and repeat. Audio: DS0169-13 ([www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv/naita.php?t=audio\\_trakk&id=4735](http://www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv/naita.php?t=audio_trakk&id=4735))

**Exercise 12.** Answer the questions:

*Kije korti estonoks /ruzoks /finneks /vengraks?  
Kije korti anglaň /vengraň kělse?  
Kije a korti erzaks? Ton kortat erzaks?  
Kije tonavtni erzań kěl? Tongak tonavtniat erzań kěl?  
Ton lovnat erzań kělse?*

**Exercise 13.** Write the caption for a group photo, using the text below as a model.

*Te Merja. Son finn. Te Paavo. Paavojak finn. Kije ie? Te mon. Mon erzan. Te eston, Indrek. Te Ilona. Son avol eston, son vengra. Tejak vengra, Edit.  
Kije se? – Olona. Son ruz? – Avol, kael. Kijelado tiň? – Mon erzan, son nemeć.*

**Exercise 14.** Translate into Erzya:

This is a university. They are students: two Finns, one Hungarian, one Russian, three Estonians. This is professor Kask, he is also Estonian. Ilona isn't Estonian, she's Hungarian. Imre is Hungarian, too. Ann is a good student. She speaks English, Russian, and Finnish well, and is studying Hungarian. We are studying Erzya. They speak Erzya.

– Hello! Are you students? – No. – Hello! Are you (pl). Hungarian? – No, we are not Hungarian. We are German. – How are you (lit. *how are you living*)? – Well. – How are you (sg.)? – So-so. – Have a nice day! – See you later.

**Exercise 15.** Visit the following link: listen to how the reporters in the video clip introduce an event in an Erzya village.

[www.youtube.com/watch?v=hXQRSdIfhMA&feature=related](http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=hXQRSdIfhMA&feature=related)



Source: [www.youtube.com/watch?v=hXQRSdIfhMA&feature=related](http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=hXQRSdIfhMA&feature=related)

## VOCABULARY *Valks*

<i>avól</i>	no, not	<i>nejemazonok</i>	goodbye
<i>anglań kel</i>	English (language)	<i>ńemeć</i>	German
<i>ara/ś, -śt</i>	is, are absent	<i>od</i>	new, young
<i>ašo</i>	white	<i>paća</i>	towel
<i>auditořija</i>	auditorium	<i>pakśa</i>	field
<i>avól</i>	not	<i>parosto</i>	well
<i>ćokšne</i>	evening	<i>piże</i>	green
<i>era/t, -tado</i>	you live (sg./pl.)	<i>pokś</i>	big
<i>eston</i>	Estonian	<i>raužo</i>	black
<i>estonoń kel</i>	Estonian (language)	<i>ruz</i>	Russian
<i>finn</i>	Finnish	<i>ruzoń kel</i>	Russian (language)
<i>finneń kel</i>	Finnish (language)	<i>sal, -ov</i>	salt, -y
<i>francuz</i>	French	<i>sastińeste</i>	ok
<i>jakśeře</i>	red	<i>seń</i>	blue
<i>jarmak</i>	money	<i>siń</i>	they
<i>kařel</i>	Karelian	<i>siře</i>	old
<i>kełme</i>	cold	<i>son</i>	he/she
<i>kije</i>	who	<i>student</i>	student
<i>kilej</i>	birch	<i>śe</i>	it, that
<i>koda</i>	how	<i>śeńe</i>	those
<i>kortams</i>	to speak	<i>śorma</i>	letter
<i>koso</i>	where	<i>śormav</i>	mottled, patterned
<i>latiž</i>	Latvian	<i>śuk-pra</i>	thank you
<i>lem</i>	name	<i>śka</i>	time
<i>lembe</i>	warm	<i>śumbra</i>	healthy
<i>litov</i>	Lithuanian	<i>tiń</i>	you ( <i>pl.</i> )
<i>lovnoms</i>	to read	<i>ton</i>	you ( <i>sg.</i> )
<i>malaso</i>	nearby	<i>tonavńems</i>	to learn
<i>mastor</i>	land, country	<i>toso</i>	there
<i>mazij</i>	beautiful	<i>te</i>	this
<i>mazijka</i>	decoration, picture	<i>tese</i>	here
<i>meze</i>	what	<i>tuža</i>	brown
<i>miń</i>	our	<i>ulems</i>	to be
<i>moda</i>	land, earth	<i>vengra</i>	Hungarian
<i>mon</i>	I	<i>vengrań kel</i>	Hungarian (language)
<i>ne, -ńe</i>	these	<i>viř</i>	forest
<i>nejems</i>	to see		



## Unit 2 Omboće pelks

### GRAMMAR

#### Introduction to the Erzya Case System

A wide variety of spatial, temporal and abstract relationships in Erzya are expressed through the grammatical case system. Case endings contribute meanings which in English are generally conveyed by the prepositions *of, about, from, by, to, in, on, without, along*, etc. Erzya nouns, pronouns, adjectives and numerals are declined in three different paradigms: the indefinite, definite, and possessive declensions. The basic meanings of each declension are illustrated below:

indefinite (singular, plural): *kudo, kudot* ‘a house, houses’;  
 definite (singular, plural): *kudoś, kudońe* ‘the house, the houses’;  
 possessive (1st–3d person, singular /plural;): *kudom/-n; -t/-t; -zo/-nzo; -nok/-nok; -nk/-nk; -st/-st* ‘(my, your (sg.), his /her /its, our, your (pl.), their) house, houses’.

The indefinite declension has 12 cases in the singular, but only one in the plural – the nominative, with the plural marker *-t/-t*. In the definite declension (see Unit 4), words appear in 10 cases in both singular and plural. In the possessive declension (see Unit 6), the number of cases is limited. Firstly, the distinction between singular and plural is largely lost in the forms. Secondly, the number of cases depends greatly on the semantics of the particular word being declined.

#### The Indefinite Declension

The Erzya case system, in the indefinite declension, is presented below:

Case and ending	Meaning	Example
Nominative (no ending in singular, <i>-t/-t</i> in plural)	(basic dictionary form)	<i>kudo</i> ‘house’, <i>jalga</i> ‘friend’, <i>lej</i> ‘river’, <i>vir</i> ‘forest’, <i>iev</i> ‘task, deed’, <i>pel</i> ‘half, side’
Genitive <i>-ń</i>	possession, relatedness (of, <i>possessive</i> ‘s)	<i>kudoń</i> ‘house’s’, <i>jalgań kudo</i> ‘a friend’s house’, <i>kudoń iev</i> ‘housework’
Dative <i>-neń/-neń</i>	to (indirect object)	<i>lomańneń</i> ‘to a person’, <i>jalganeń</i> ‘to a friend’, <i>azorneń</i> ‘to a proprietor’
Ablative <i>-to/-te/-te/-do/-de/-de</i>	from (place, source), about	<i>kudodo</i> ‘about a house’, <i>jalgań pelde</i> ‘from a friend’
Inessive <i>-so/-se</i>	in, at	<i>kudoso</i> ‘at home’, <i>virse</i> ‘in a forest’
Elative <i>-sto/-ste</i>	from (source, place, time), at (time)	<i>kudosto</i> ‘from home’, <i>kotosto</i> ‘at six o’clock, from six up to (seven)’
Illative <i>-s</i>	into, until (time), up to	<i>kudodo kudost</i> ‘from house to house’, <i>vir’s</i> ‘into a forest’, <i>vejkse</i> ‘until nine o’clock’
Lative <i>-v</i>	to, toward, in the direction of	<i>vir’ev</i> ‘to the forest’, <i>kudov</i> ‘home’
Prolative <i>-va/-ga/-ka</i>	along, about (area of movement)	<i>lejga</i> ‘along a river’, <i>kudova</i> ‘around /about the house’
Comparative <i>-ška</i>	approximately (quantity, size)	<i>šadoška</i> ‘about a hundred’
Abessive <i>-vtomo/-vteme/-tomo/-teme</i>	without	<i>kudvtomo</i> ‘homeless’, <i>jalgavtomo</i> ‘friendless’, <i>ievteme</i> ‘idle, without work’
Translative <i>-ks</i>	as, into (describes a state of being or a change thereof)	<i>jalgaks</i> ‘as a friend’, <i>kudoks</i> ‘as a home’

The use of case forms with different nominals is governed by the meaning of each nominal. Cases such as the inessive, elative, illative, lative, and prolative are used primarily with words denoting spatial relationships. The dative is used primarily with nouns denoting living beings. The comparative case is formed from words that denote an amount, size, or quantity.

Erzya cases have a range of uses in addition to their basic spatial meanings. For example, the inessive case (-*so/-se*) is used to communicate instrumentality or manner, e.g. *salmuksso* ‘with a needle’, *večkemaso* ‘with love’. The elative (-*sto/-ste*) and illative (-*s*) are used in time expressions, e.g. *kavtosto kotos* ‘from 2:00 to 6:00’; the elative is also used to show that something happens “in” or “at” a certain time, e.g. *vastovtano kavksosto* ‘we’ll meet at 8:00’.

Examples (*kudo* ‘house, home’, *lomań* ‘person’, *śeđej* ‘heart’):

Nom.	<i>kudo</i>	<i>lomań</i>	<i>śeđej</i>
Gen.	<i>kudo-ń</i>	<i>lomań-e-ń</i>	<i>śeđej-e-ń</i>
Dat.	–	<i>lomań-ńeń</i>	<i>(śeđej-ńeń)</i>
Abl.	<i>kudo-do</i>	<i>lomań-đe</i>	<i>śeđej-đe</i>
Iness.	<i>kudo-so</i>	<i>(lomań-se)</i>	<i>śeđej-se</i>
Elat.	<i>kudo-sto</i>	<i>(lomań-ste)</i>	<i>śeđej-ste</i>
Illat.	<i>kudo-s</i>	<i>(lomań-s)</i>	<i>śeđej-s</i>
Lat.	<i>kudo-v</i>	–	–
Prol.	<i>kudo-va</i>	<i>(lomań-ga)</i>	<i>śeđej-ga</i>
Comp.	<i>(kudo-ška)</i>	<i>(lomań-ška)</i>	<i>(śeđej-ška)</i>
Abess.	<i>kudo-vtomo</i>	<i>lomań-ťeme</i>	<i>śeđej-ťeme</i>
Transl.	<i>kudo-ks</i>	<i>lomań-e-ks</i>	<i>śeđej-e-ks</i>

As seen from the table given above, an epenthetic vowel (*o* or *e*, in accordance with the rules of vowel harmony) appears between the stem that ends in a consonant and some of the case endings, e.g. *lomań-e-ń*. Stem-final *o* and *e* are dropped before the local case endings (-*s*, -*so/-se*, -*sto/-ste*) when they are preceded by a consonant cluster ending in *d*, *k* or *g* (in some words also *p*, *b*, *m*, *ž*, *č*), e.g. *śelme* ‘eye’: *śel̥m-s*, *śel̥m-se*, *śel̥m-ste*. The three variations of the prolative ending (-*ga/-ka/-va*) are used as follows:

- ga* follows a voiced consonant (*viř-ga*)
- ka* follows a voiceless consonant (*kijaks-ka*)
- va* follows a vowel (*kudo-va*).

Examples:

<i>paro kudo</i> ‘a good house’	<i>sovams kudos</i> ‘to enter a house’
<i>kudoń tėv</i> ‘housework’	<i>mołems kudov</i> ‘to go home, to a house’
<i>kortams kudodo</i> ‘to speak about a house’	<i>jakams kudova</i> ‘to walk about/through a house’
<i>eřams kudoso</i> ‘to live in a house’	<i>kudovtomo lomań</i> ‘homeless person’
<i>lišems kudosto</i> ‘to go out of a house’	<i>lovoms kudoks</i> ‘to consider/count as a house’

In addition to the 12 primary cases listed above, there are arguably two other cases in Erzya, the accusative and the comitative. The *accusative*, which functions as direct object, lacks a case ending of its own in the indefinite declension; its form is identical to that of the nominative, e.g.:

*Ava jaki viřga.* A woman is walking in a forest.  
*Mon ńejan ava.* I see a woman.

The *comitative* is used in the meaning of ‘together with’, e.g. *studěntnek, jalgańek* ‘together with a student /students, together with a friend /friends’. The more general meaning of ‘with’ is expressed by the postposition *marto*, e.g. *jalga marto* ‘with a friend’, *lovso marto kši* ‘bread with milk’ (*kši* ‘bread’, *lovso* ‘milk’).

There is a range of postpositions in Erzya, which display case forms analogous to nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and adverbs. Postpositions serve as additional means for the expression of the relations between agents or objects.

Examples:

*pele* ‘on /to the side’: *či pele* ‘in the sun’, *či pelde* ‘from the (side of the) sun, from the South’, *či pelev* ‘in the direction of the sun, to the South’, *či pelga* ‘along the sunny /Southern side’.

Nominalized adjectives (i.e. adjectives that stand alone as nouns, with no head noun following them):

*ašo* ‘white’, *-do, -so, -sto, -s, -va, -ks, -vtomo*;  
*piže* ‘green’, *-de, -se, -ste, -s, -va, -ks, -vteme*.

## Pronouns

The most common pronouns in Erzya are represented by both simple stems and lexicalized combinations of a stem with a case ending:

Personal pronouns:

*mon* ‘I’, *ton* ‘you (sg.)’, *son* ‘he/she/it’, *miń* ‘we’, *tiń* ‘you (pl.)’, *siń* ‘they’.

Demonstrative pronouns:

*te* ‘this’, *se* ‘that’, *ńe(-tńe)* ‘these’, *se(-tńe)* ‘those’.

Interrogative pronouns:

*kije* ‘who’, *meže* ‘what’, *koda* ‘how’, also: *kona* ‘which’, *kodamo* (< *ko-*) ‘what kind’, *kiń* (< *kije* + *-ń*) ‘whose’, *mežeks* (< *meže* + *-ks*) ‘what for’, *meks* (< *meže* + *-ks*) ‘why’, *koso* (< *ko-* + *-so*) ‘where’, *kosto* (< *ko-* + *-sto*) ‘from where’, *kov* (< *ko-* + *-v*) ‘to where’, *kuva* (< *ku-* + *-va*) ‘where, along/through what/where’, *śńaro, śńardo, śńars* ‘how much/many, when, for how long’.

The emphatic particle *-gak/-jak/-kak* affixed to personal and demonstrative pronouns conveys the meanings of ‘too, also’: *mongak* ‘I too’, *tongak* ‘you (sg.) too’, *songak* ‘he/she too’, *mińgak* ‘we too’, *tińgak* ‘you (pl.) too’, *sińgak* ‘they too’, *tejak* ‘this too’, *sejak* ‘that too’, *ńe(-tńe)-jak* ‘these too’.

Interrogative pronouns with the emphatic particle affixed to them function as both indefinite and negative pronouns: *kijak* ‘someone /anyone /no-one’, *mežejak* ‘something /anything /nothing’, *kodajak* ‘somehow /anyhow /in no way’, *kodamojak* ‘some kind of /any kind of /no kind of’, *kosojak* ‘somewhere /anywhere /nowhere’, *śńardojak* ‘sometime /any time /never’:

- *Kijak korti erzaks?* Does anyone (here) speak Erzya? *Kijak a korti.* No one speaks (it).
- *Ton mežejak ńejat?* Do you see anything? *Mežejak a ńejan.* I don’t see anything. /I see nothing.

## Adverbs

Adverbs are formed primarily through the use of compounding and derivational suffixes, e.g. *ieči* ‘today’ (*ie* ‘this’ + *či* ‘day’), *parosto* ‘well’ (*paro* ‘good’ + *-sto*), *beńańste* ‘badly’ (*beńań* ‘bad’ + *-ste*). As can be seen from the previous examples, the suffix *-sto/-ste* is used to form adverbs from adjectives, similar to the English *-ly*. Adverbs may also be derived by adding case endings to adjectives or pronouns, as shown below:

<i>-so /-se</i>	<i>toso</i> there	<i>íese</i> here	<i>malaso</i> near
<i>-sto /-ste</i>	<i>tosto</i> from there	<i>íeste</i> from here	<i>malasto</i> from near

-v /-j	<i>tov</i> (to) there	<i>íej</i> (to) here	<i>malav</i> (to) near
-va /-ja	<i>tuva</i> along there	<i>íja</i> along here	<i>malava</i> along near

As these examples illustrate, adverbs formed with the help of derivational suffixes are structurally quite transparent. Adverbs such as *pek* 'very' ja *nej* 'now' may be considered basic forms, consisting of only a stem. Some adverb forms have preserved older case endings: *vašna* 'in the beginning, at first', *mejle* 'after', *valske* 'tomorrow, morning', *čokšne* 'evening, in the evening', *kuvat* 'for a long time', *ielna* 'in winter'. Pronouns and adverbs are declined like other nominals.

### Examples

*mežeņ, íeņ, kiņ* (*kije-* + *-ņ*); *íeseņ, kostoņ, nejēņ*: genitive *-ņ* 'of';  
*mežede, kodamodo*: ablative *-de /-do* 'of, about';  
*kodamovtomo, meževtēme*: abessive *-vtomo/-vtēme* 'without'.

### Exercise 1. Decline the following words:

*ava, lomaņ, pakša, pando, od;*  
*tejteŗ, šelme, šedej, lej, viŗ, piŗe.*

### Exercise 2. Put the following word forms into the appropriate column below, and add your own examples:

*Tartuv, Tallinnste, Estonijava, Udmurtijaso, Moskovsto, Amerikav, Rigava, Oslosto, Vengrijava, Saranso, Germanijav, Rakverev, Pārusto, Helsinkiste.*

Where	From where	To where	Through where
<i>Saranso</i>			

### Exercise 3. Conjugate the verbs in the phrases *jakams viŗga, kortams erzaņ kelse*, and *molems kals* for different subjects, e.g.:

*Siņ a molit teči kals.*  
*Ton kortat erzaņ kelse.*

### Exercise 4. Combine appropriate nouns from columns a-e with the verbs *erams, molems, nejems, jakams*, and *kortams*, and give the English equivalent of each word pair.

a	b	c	d	e
<i>lej</i>	<i>kudov</i>	<i>velese</i>	<i>alamo</i>	<i>pakšava</i>
<i>kalt</i>	<i>viŗev</i>	<i>lomaņeks</i>	<i>parodo</i>	<i>ejga</i>
<i>tejteŗ</i>	<i>keds</i>	<i>kudoso</i>	<i>sastiņeste</i>	<i>velev</i>
<i>lomaņt</i>	<i>pakšav</i>	<i>vedse</i>	<i>parosto</i>	<i>veds</i>
<i>mastort</i>	<i>veds</i>	<i>lomaņga</i>	<i>erzaks</i>	<i>piŗeva</i>

### Exercise 5. Listen and repeat. Audio: DS0169-14 ([www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv/naita.php?t=audio\\_trakk&id=4736](http://www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv/naita.php?t=audio_trakk&id=4736))

### Exercise 6. Visit the following link:

[www.youtube.com/watch?v=WWupcV8IGWg&feature=endscreen](http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=WWupcV8IGWg&feature=endscreen)

Pay attention to the phrases used in the video clip and number them in the order they appear in the video clip:

a	<i>Jalġat, veise!</i> Friends, together!	1
b	<i>Meže ištamo?</i> What is this?	?
c	<i>Miñ mołtano, miñ mołtano...</i> We're going, we're going	?
d	<i>Jalġat, purnado vejs!</i> Friends, gather together!	?
e	<i>Jalġat, mołtano kerš jonov!</i> Friends, let's go to the left!	?
f	<i>Vejke, kavto, kolmo, ñile...</i> One, two, three, four...	?

### Compound Forms: Declinable Word + *ulems*- Personal Ending

As it has been said above, predicative sentences in Erzya are formed by affixing the personal endings of the verb *ulems* to nominals. The personal endings may be added to the words both in their basic forms and in case forms. In the examples below, the personal endings of *ulems* are added to the forms *vele-se* 'in a village', *kije* 'who', *kosto-ń* 'where from (by birth/origin)', and *vasol-do* 'from afar'.

<i>mon</i>	<i>velesan</i>	<i>kijan</i>	<i>kostońan</i>	<i>vasoldan</i>
<i>ton</i>	<i>velesat</i>	<i>kijat</i>	<i>kostońat</i>	<i>vasoldat</i>
<i>son</i>	<i>velese</i>	<i>kije</i>	<i>kostoń</i>	<i>vasoldo</i>
<i>miñ</i>	<i>velesetano</i>	<i>ki(je)tano</i>	<i>kostońtano</i>	<i>vasoldotano</i>
<i>tiñ</i>	<i>velesetado</i>	<i>ki(je)tado</i>	<i>kostońtado</i>	<i>vasoldotado</i>
<i>siñ</i>	<i>veleset</i>	<i>ki(je)t</i>	<i>kostońt</i>	<i>vasoldot</i>

This compound structure allows entire English predicative sentences to be expressed in Erzya with a single word, e.g.:

*Velesan.* = I'm in a village.

*Kijat?* = who are you?

*Kostońtado?* Where are you (plural) from?

*Vasoldot.* They are from afar.

**Exercise 7.** Read the following dialogues; replace the singular pronouns *mon*, *ton*, and *son* with the corresponding plural forms (*miñ*, *tiñ*, *siñ*) and make any other necessary changes in the text:

- |                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| - <i>Kijat ton?</i> | - <i>Kije son?</i>  |
| - <i>Erżan.</i>     | - <i>Erża.</i>      |
| - <i>Koso erát?</i> | - <i>Koso eri?</i>  |
| - <i>Tartuso.</i>   | - <i>Tállinnse.</i> |
| - <i>Kov mołat?</i> | - <i>Kov mołi?</i>  |
| - <i>Tállinnev.</i> | - <i>Tartuv.</i>    |

**Exercise 8.** Match the questions with the answers:

- |                      |                      |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| - <i>Kosat?</i>      | - <i>Stúdent.</i>    |
| - <i>Kov mołat?</i>  | - <i>Ťesan.</i>      |
| - <i>Kijat?</i>      | - <i>Pek paro.</i>   |
| - <i>Koso erát?</i>  | - <i>Velese.</i>     |
| - <i>Kodamo son?</i> | - <i>Kinov.</i>      |
| - <i>Kije son?</i>   | - <i>Naimanstan.</i> |
| - <i>Kostońat?</i>   | - <i>Stúdentan.</i>  |

## CONVERSATION AND READING Kortamo – lovnoma

### Kijat, kostoňat? Who are you and where are you from?

<i>kostoňat? (kosto-ń-at)</i>	Where are you from?
<i>iňe /pokš:</i>	big
<i>iňeved</i>	sea
<i>pokš kudo</i>	big house
<i>šumbra lomaň</i>	healthy person
<i>studenteň kudo</i>	dormitory
<i>inžeň kudo</i>	guest house, hostel

### TEXTS

1. *Mikoľ eržaň ćora. Maŗa eržaň tejteŗ. Maŗat-Mikoľi od lomaňi. Siň nej Estoňijasot. Tese erit estont, ruzt, latižt, ľija raškeň lomaňikak. Maŗat-Mikoľi alamodo kortiit estonoň kelse.*
2. *Jaant-Toomast estonoň ćorat. Siň Tallinnset. Nej siň Tartusot. Siňgak odt. Paro, mazij lomaňi. Siň tonavthit univērsitetse. Erit studenteň kudoso.*
3. *Istvánt-Ferencť vengrat. Siň tetat-ćorat. István šumbra siŗe lomaň. Ferenc mazij od ćora. Siň nej Tallinnset. Siň turistt. Erit otelse (inžeň kudoso). Siň jakit Tallinnga jalgo, nejit mazij tarkat.*
4. *Ilse Elza marto latižt Rigasto, siň avat- tejteŗi. Rigaso siň erit pokš kudoso. Ilse a siŗe, son mazij paro ava. Elzajak mazij. Siň nej Pärnuň sanatoŗijasot. Pärnu iňeved malaso. Erit tese kolmoška ĉit.*
5. *Henry anglaň ćora, Maŗu eržaň tejteŗ. Siň tonavthit Tartuň univērsitetse. Nej siň eržaň keleň šeminarsot. Henry parosto korti eržaks. Son tonavthi finneň-ugraň kelť. Maŗu Saranoň malasto. Songak tonavthi finneň-ugraň kelť. Siň erit studenteň kudoso.*

**Exercise 9.** Listen and repeat. Audio: DS0169-15 ([www.murre.ut.ee/arhiv/naita.php?t=audio\\_trakk&id=4737](http://www.murre.ut.ee/arhiv/naita.php?t=audio_trakk&id=4737))

**Exercise 10.** Answer the questions:

- Kit Maŗat-Mikoľi? Kosot siň?  
Kodamo kelse siň kortiit Estoňijasot?  
Jaant-Toomast od lomaňi? Kodamot siň?  
Koso siň erit? Kosot nej siň?  
Koso tonavthit Jaant-Toomast?  
Kit Istvánt-Ferencť? Meks siň Tallinnset?  
Ilseĉ-Elzat jalgat? Kosot siň?  
Koso tonavthit Henry Maŗuň marto?  
Meže tonavthi Henry?  
Kostoň Maŗu? Meks son nej Tartuso?  
Kijat ton? Kostoňat? Koso erat? Meže tonavthat?*

**Exercise 11.** Fill the blanks with words from the list below, then make a similar text on your own.

Word list: *molan, kostoňat, kortat, parosto, koso, ton, meže, tonavthian, alamodo, erat, tonavthat.*

Šoma Ton ... ? Finnät?  
 Aniko Avoĺ, vengran.  
 Šoma ... erät? Budapeštse?  
 Aniko Moskovso.  
 Šoma ... tejat?  
 Aniko ... uniwersitetse. ... erät Mordovijaso?  
 Šoma Mordovijaso.  
 Aniko ... Tartuń uniwersitetse?  
 Šoma Avoĺ, Mordovijań Uniwersitetse. Nej Tartusan.  
 Aniko Ton vengraks ... ?  
 Šoma ... kortan. Mon kortan eržaks, ruzoks, finneks, estonoks.  
 Aniko Mon kortan vengraks, finneks, alamodo eržaks, ruzokskak.  
 Šoma Ton pek ... kortat eržaks.  
 Aniko Nej mon ... finneń keleń lekćijav. Tongak moĺat?  
 Šoma Araś, mon moĺan avoĺ lekćijav, seminarov.

**Exercise 12.** Replace the English words in parentheses with Erzya words.

Excerpts from phone conversations:

–Te (who)? Ton, Joga?  
 –Mon.  
 –Ton (where are you)?Kudosat?  
 –(No).  
 –Velesat?  
 –(No). Finneń mastorsan.  
 –Finlandijasat?(What) toso tejat?  
 –(I'm studying) finneń kel.

–Šumbrat, Petra!  
 –Šumbrat, Olda! Kosto (are you speaking)?  
 –(From home). Ton meže tejat?  
 –(I'm reading).  
 –Ška (there is no) kortams?  
 –(There is).

**Exercise 13.** Translate into Erzya:

a). I'm going home. Today I'm not going anywhere. I'm going to the cinema. Do you go to the cinema? He lives in the country (in a village). Where are you from? They study at university. Where do you study? We know a lot of songs. Do you know a song? I'm writing a letter. What are you writing? This is a beautiful place. What country do you live in? You speak many languages. Does anyone speak Erzya? I don't see anything. What do you see? They are Erzyans. Who are you? We are well (we are living well). How are you?

b). Veiko is Finnish. He is studying Estonian at the University of Tartu. Veiko is a good boy, he studies well. Veiko speaks Estonian. He visits Hungary, where he speaks Hungarian. Now Veiko is also learning Erzya. He reads in Erzya. An Erzya girl, Nataĺ, studies at the University of Tartu. She studies English. Nataĺ is from an Erzya village. She is a pretty girl. Nataĺ and Veiko speak Estonian and English. Now Veiko also speaks a little Erzya. I am Russian. I am from Moscow. I study Estonian and Finnish at the University of Tartu.

**Exercise 14.** Visit the following link: listen to how a young teacher of Erzya in a primary school introduces himself.

[www.youtube.com/watch?NR=1&v=-vPm9Vk\\_siA&feature=endscreen](http://www.youtube.com/watch?NR=1&v=-vPm9Vk_siA&feature=endscreen)

## VOCABULARY *Valks*

<i>alamo</i>	a small amount, few	<i>meks</i>	why
<i>alamodo</i>	a little (bit)	<i>mekskak</i>	because of
<i>iñeveđ</i>	sea	<i>mežejak</i>	something, anything, nothing
<i>jalga</i>	friend	<i>mežeks</i>	what for
<i>jalgo</i>	by foot	<i>mežekskak</i>	for something, anything, nothing
<i>kijak</i>	someone /anyone /no-one	<i>moro</i>	song
<i>kijaks</i>	floor	<i>ñej</i>	now
<i>kiľej</i>	birch	<i>otel, inžeñ kudo</i>	hotel, guesthouse
<i>kiñ</i>	whose	<i>pando</i>	mountain, hill
<i>kodajak</i>	somehow/anyhow/in no way	<i>pek</i>	very
<i>kodamo</i>	what kind	<i>pokš</i>	big
<i>kona</i>	which	<i>raške</i>	people
<i>kosojak</i>	somewhere/anywhere/nowhere	<i>salmuks</i>	needle
<i>kostojak</i>	from somewhere/anywhere/nowhere	<i>sal, -ov</i>	salt, -y
<i>kostoñ</i>	from where	<i>siře</i>	old
<i>kov</i>	to where	<i>sñardo</i>	when
<i>kuva</i>	where, along /through what /where	<i>sñardo-sñardo</i>	sometimes
<i>kuvajak</i>	somewhere, anywhere, nowhere	<i>sñaro (žaro)</i>	how much
<i>kuvat, -s</i>	for a long time	<i>sñars</i>	(for ) how long /far
<i>lamo</i>	many, much, a lot	<i>šeñe</i>	those
<i>lekćija</i>	lecture	<i>sodams</i>	to know
<i>lej</i>	river	<i>sovams</i>	to enter
<i>lija</i>	other	<i>šormadoms</i>	to write
<i>lišems</i>	to exit	<i>šabra</i>	neighbour
<i>lovnomapel</i>	something to read	<i>tarka</i>	place
<i>lovso</i>	milk	<i>iej</i>	to here, hither
<i>mala/so, -sto</i>	close/near, from close/near	<i>toso</i>	there
<i>malav</i>	(to) close/near	<i>tov</i>	to there, thither
<i>malava</i>	by (along) close/near	<i>tuva</i>	through there
<i>marto</i>	with	<i>valske (marto)</i>	morning, in the morning
<i>mastor</i>	land	<i>vašña</i>	in the beginning
<i>mejle</i>	after	<i>vasolo</i>	far



Source: [www.youtube.com/watch?NR=1&v=-vPm9Vksia&feature=endscreen](http://www.youtube.com/watch?NR=1&v=-vPm9Vksia&feature=endscreen)



## Unit 3 *Kolmoće pelks*

### GRAMMAR

#### Numerals

Basic forms of numerals:

1 <i>vejke</i>	6 <i>koto</i>	
2 <i>kavto</i>	7 <i>šišem</i>	
3 <i>kolmo</i>	8 <i>kavkso</i>	
4 <i>ńiłe</i>	9 <i>vejkse</i>	
5 <i>vete</i>	10 <i>kemeń</i>	
0 <i>noł</i>	100 <i>śado</i>	1000 <i>tożeń</i>

Numerals formed by compounding:

a) *kemeń* + (*vejke...vejkse*) + (-*je* /-*vo* /-*ge*)

(-*je* after a front vowel, -*vo* after a back vowel, -*ge* after a sonorant):

- 11 *kevejkeje*
- 12 *kemkavtovo* > *kemgavtovo*
- 13 *kemkolmovo* > *kemgolmovo*
- 14 *kemńiłeje*
- 15 *keveteje*
- 16 *kemkotovo* > *kemgotovo*
- 17 *kemšišemge* > *kemžišemge*
- 18 *kemkavksovo* > *kemgavksovo*
- 19 *kevejkseje*

b) *komś* + (*vejke...vejkse*) + (-*je* /-*vo* /-*ge*)

(-*je* after a front vowel, -*vo* after a back vowel, -*ge* after a sonorant)

- 20 *komś*
- 21 *komśvejkeje*
- 22 *komśkavtovo*
- 23 *komśkolmovo*
- 24 *komśńiłeje*
- 25 *komśveteje*
- 26 *komśkotovo*
- 27 *komśšišemge*
- 28 *komśkavksovo*
- 29 *komśvejkseje*

c) (*kolmo...vejkse*) + -*ń* + *kemeń* + (*vejke...vejkse*)

- 30 *kolmoń* + *kemeń* > *kol(m)ońgemeń*
- 31 *kolmońkemeń vejke* > *kol(m)ońgemeń (vejke)*
- 40 *ńiłeń* + *kemeń* > *ńiłeńgemeń*
- 50 *veteń* + *kemeń* > *vedgemeń*
- 60 *kotoń* + *kemeń* > *kodgemeń*
- 70 *šišemeń* + *kemeń* > *šižgemeń*
- 80 *kavksoń* + *kemeń* > *kavksońgemeń*
- 90 *vejkseń* + *kemeń* > *vejkseńgemeń*

d) *śado* + (*vejke ... kemeń*); *śado* + a) /b) /c)

100 *śado*  
101 *śado vejke*  
111 *śado kevejkeje*  
133 *śado kolmońgemeń kolmo*

e) (*kavto...vejke*) + *śadt* (plural) + (*vejke ... kemeń*); ...*śadt* + a) /b) /c)

200 *kavto śadt* (> *śatt*)  
567 *veće śadt kodgemeń śiśem*

f) *íożeń* + (*vejke...vejke*); *íożeń* + a) /b) /c) /d) /e)

1000 *íożeń (tišča)*  
1933 *íożeń vejke śadt kolmońgemeń kolmo*

g) (*vejke...vejke*) + *íożeń(t)* + a) /b) /c) /d) /e)

10 000 *kemeń íožeńt* (> *íožeńt*)  
1 000 000 *million*

### Declension of Numerals

Both simple and compound numerals are declined. Numerals ending in a consonant receive a linking vowel before the case endings, as follows:

Nom.	<i>śiśem</i>	<i>kavkso</i>	<i>komś</i>
Gen.	<i>śiśem-e-ń</i>	<i>kavkso-ń</i>	<i>komś-e-ń</i>
Dat.	<i>śiśem-e-ńeń</i>	<i>kavkso-ńeń</i>	<i>komś-e-ńeń</i>
Abl.	<i>śiśem-e-de</i>	<i>kavkso-do</i>	<i>komś-e-de</i>
Iness.	<i>śiśem-e-se</i>	<i>kavkso-so</i>	<i>komś-e-se</i>
Elat.	<i>śiśem-e-ste</i>	<i>kavkso-sto</i>	<i>komś-e-ste</i>
Ill.	<i>śiśem-e-s</i>	<i>kavkso-s</i>	<i>komś-e-s</i>
Lat.	<i>śiśem-e-v</i>	<i>kavkso-v</i>	<i>komś-e-v</i>
Prolat.	<i>śiśem-ga</i>	<i>kavkso-va</i>	<i>komś-e-va</i>
Comp.	<i>śiśem-ška</i>	<i>kavkso-ška</i>	<i>komś-e-ška</i>
Abess.	<i>śiśem-e-vtème</i> <i>śiśem-tème</i>	<i>kavkso-vtomo</i>	<i>komś-e-vtème</i>
Transl.	<i>śiśem-e-ks</i>	<i>kavkso-ks</i>	<i>komś-e-ks</i>

With the numerals 2–10, nouns appear in the plural e.g. *veće čit*. However, with numbers greater than 10, nouns may appear in either the singular or the plural: *komś či, -í*. Approximate quantities are expressed by the comparative case form of numerals: *kolmoška, śadoška* ‘about three, about a hundred’.

**Exercise 1.** Listen and repeat (audio: DS0169-16, 17)

(Audio: [www.murre.ut.ee/arhiv/naita.php?t=audio\\_trakk&id=4738](http://www.murre.ut.ee/arhiv/naita.php?t=audio_trakk&id=4738))

- *vejke, kavto, kolmo, nile, veté, koto, śiśem, kavkso, vejke, kemeń, komś, komśvejkeje, komśvetéje, komśśiśemge, komśvejkeje.*

(Audio: [www.murre.ut.ee/arhiv/naita.php?t=audio\\_trakk&id=4739](http://www.murre.ut.ee/arhiv/naita.php?t=audio_trakk&id=4739))

- *śado, śado vejke, śado kolmońgemeń kolmo, kavto śadt, veté śadt kodgemeń śiśem, tożeń, tożeń vejke śadt kolmońgemeń kolmo, kemeń tožeńt.*

**Exercise 2.** Listen to the song at the following link: pay attention to the numerals used.

[www.youtube.com/watch?v=q-ZIRZDDXFQ&feature=related](http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=q-ZIRZDDXFQ&feature=related)

**Exercise 3.** Study how the principle of vowel harmony is reflected in numerals:

- (front vowel words): *vejke, níle, veé, vejkse, kemeń, kevejkeje, kemńíleje, keveteje, kemžísemge, kevejkseje, níleńgemeń, vedgemeń, šížgemeń, vejkseńgemeń;*
- (back vowel words): *kavto, kolmo, koto, kavkso, komś, komśkavtovo, komśkolmovo, komśkotovo, komśkavksovo, śado;*
- (compound words with back vowels followed by front vowels): *komśvejkeje, komśńíleje, komśveéje, komśšísemge, komśvejkseje, kolmońgemeń, kavksońgemeń;*
- (compound words with front vowels followed by back vowels): *kemgavtovo, kemgolmovo, kemgotovo, kemgavksovo.*

**Exercise 4.** Write the following numbers in Erzya: your year of birth, street address, apartment and telephone number. Then read the numbers to your classmates.

**Exercise 5.** Say how old your family members are.

Examples:

*avam 50 ijese* My mother is 50 years old (in her 50s);

*íteám* (my father) ...;

*sazorom* (my younger sister) ...;

*paám* (my older sister) ...;

*jalaksom* (my younger brother) ...;

*léám* (my older brother) ... .

**Exercise 6.** Read the following SMSs:

- 4:00 – 6:00 *śeminarsan, ulán kudoso* 7:00.
- *Mońan uńiverśítetev, toso ulán 3-ška časst.*
- *ńejemazonok íeatraso, 6-sto.*

## CONVERSATION AND READING *Kortamo – lovnoma*

### *Meže téči téjat? What are you doing today?*

<i>araś ška(-m)</i>	(I) don't have time
<i>a uli ška(-m)</i>	(I) won't have time
	(-m = possessive case, see unit 6)
<i>kuvats mońat?</i>	Are you going for long?
<i>kodamo škasto?</i>	At what time?
<i>vanta ...</i>	Look (listen...)
<i>sodat meže ...</i>	You know what?
<i>a sodan (also: azdan)</i>	I don't know
<i>eń, eno...</i>	So, ...
<i>paro ki!</i>	Have a good trip!
<i>převejka</i>	wiseacre (but in a playful way, not pejorative as in English)
<i>śuk-pńa</i>	Thank you!

**Exercise 7.** Listen and repeat. Audio: DS0169-18 ([www.murre.ut.ee/arhiv/naita.php?t=audio\\_trakk&id=4740](http://www.murre.ut.ee/arhiv/naita.php?t=audio_trakk&id=4740))

### TEXT 1

*Mařat-Mikoľ jarsiť teči avoľ kafeterijaso. Čit toso pek lamo lomaňt. Siň moľit Mařaneň. Mařa teji kaloň jam. Mařat-Mikoľ jarsiť-tejit, moľit lekčijav, čokšne moľit kafeterijav, mejle teatrav.*

*Mařa Mikoľ, koso jarsat teči?  
Mikoľ A sodan. Kudoso jarsams a uli ška – eran vasolo, kafeterijaso pek lamo lomaňt.  
Mařa Sodat meže.... Mon eran malaso, jarsatano teči moň kudoso. Mon tejan kaloň jam.  
Mikoľ Kaloň jam? Paro, pek paro!  
Mařa Kodamo škasto jarsatano?  
Mikoľ Vejkeste. Ton paro lomaňat, Mařuša. Šuk-pra!  
Mařa Er, nejemazonok.  
Mikoľ Nejemazonok.*

### TEXT 2

*Teči Mařaň kemeňste niľes šeminart-lekčijav. Mejle son moľi bibliotekav. Mikoľ moľi čit teatran kassav, rami bilett. Čokšne Mařat-Mikoľ moľit teatrav, toso teči od opera, Litova.*

*Mikoľ Ton moľat univeršitetev?  
Mařa Moľan.  
Mikoľ Kuvaits?  
Mařa Kemeňste kotos.  
Mikoľ Meže tejav?  
Mařa Uľan lekčijaso, šeminarso.  
Mikoľ Vanta, čokšne teatraso od opera, Litova. Moľtano teatrav?  
Mařa Meks a moľems... Moľtano, pek paro! Bilett ulit?  
Mikoľ A sodan. Čit moľan kassav, kevksian. Parak ulit.  
Mařa Šeste tejavano išta. Mon moľan univeršitetev, ton moľat kassav, ramat bilett.  
Mikoľ Er, eno, čokšnes, prevejka!*

### TEXT 3

*Mařat-Mikoľ autobusoň kassasot. Mikoľ moľi velev. Toso lamo viřen-pakšan tevť. Rami busoň bilett. Velelv son moľi kavtoška čis. Eš mašinaso Mikoľ velev a jaki. Mařa moľi ekskuršijav. Teči uli busoň ekskuršija Sura-tejav peľga.*

*Mařa Kov moľat, Mikoľ?  
Mikoľ Velelv.  
Mařa Kuvaits?  
Mikoľ A kuvaits. Kavtoška čis. Lezdan kudoso. Velese nej lamo viřen-pakšan tevť.  
Mařa Išta. Moľat busso, avoľ mašinaso?  
Mikoľ Busso. Eš mašinaso a jakan velev. Beřaň kiva mašina a čidardi. Kov ton moľat?  
Mařa Ekskuršijav. Teči uli busoň ekskuršija kemeňste niľes Sura-tejav peľga.  
Mikoľ Paro ki, Mařa!  
Mařa Šumbrasto!*

**Exercise 8.** Answer the questions:

*Meže teji Mařa univeršitetse teči?  
Kije rami bilett teatran kassasto?  
Meks Mikoľ a jarsi čit kafeterijaso?  
Koso jarsiť teči Mařat-Mikoľ?*

*Meks molí Mikoľ veľev?  
 Šňaroška či ulí Mikoľ veľese?  
 Jaki Mikoľ veľev eš mašinaso?  
 Kov molí Maňa? Kuváts?  
 Ton jakat teatrav, ekskuršijav?*

**Exercise 9.** Fill the blanks with personal endings and case suffixes:

- Mon nej* ('now') *a eňa... veľese. Tonavňan uníversítet..., Tartu... . Veľe... jakan čurosto* ('rarely').
- Čít jarsa... stuđent... kafeterijaso. Čokšňe jarsan kudo... . Tejan paro kal... jam. Mejľe tejan kudo... teví. Jakan teatra...*
- Teči a molan lekčija..., molan veľev. Kemeň... ulí bus, molan bus... . Rama... biľet. Tejan kudo... teví.*
- Ton moľa... teči ekskuršija...? – A moľa....*
- Siň korti... eržaks? – A korti...*
- Šňaro či... molat ekskuršija...? – Vejke či...*
- Šňaro... lomaňt molít veľev? – Alamo, kavto-kolmo.*

**Exercise 10.** Form questions that correspond to the answers given, e.g.:

Question: – *Kuvať ulat bibliotekaso?*

Answer: – *Teči ulan bibliotekaso a kuvať.*

Question	Answer
–?	<i>Mejľe jarsan-tejan, molan kudov.</i>
–?	<i>Čokšňe vanan televizorsto balet.</i>
–?	<i>Jakan teatragak.</i>
–?	<i>Avoľ, ekskuršijav.</i>
–?	<i>Molan veľev kavtoška čis.</i>

**Exercise 11.** Talk with your classmates about your daily routine, using the following model:

*Meže tejat teči kavtosto niles? Kodamo škasto ... (ulat, molat, jarsat)?*

8-10 *ulems kudoso ...*  
 10-12 *ulems seminarso, molems seminarov ...*  
 12-14 *moľems lekčijav ...*  
 14-15 *jarsams(-tejemso) ... (kudoso, kafeterijaso)*  
 15-18 *moľems bibliotekav, lovnoms bibliotekaso*  
*čokšňe jarsams jalgaň kudoso, kortams, vanoms TV*

**Exercise 12.** Fill the blanks in the riddles (missing words: *vaniť, maksan, teľeňek, korti, jakšteře*).

*Sodamojovkst*  
*Vejke ..., kavto ..., kavto kunsoliť. (= Kurgo, šelmt, pílet).*  
*Molan – molí, lotkan – lotki, jarsams ... – a jarsi. (= Sulej).*  
*Kizeňek – ... od čora. (= Piče).*  
*Kudodo kudoso ... atakš jaki. (= Tol).*

**Exercise 13.** Translate into Erzya:

Kadri and Mikk are students. They're not going to the university cafeteria today, there are a lot of people there. They're eating at Kadri's house. Kadri is making fish soup. There's a new opera at the theater this evening. Mikk will go during the day to the ticket office and buy tickets.

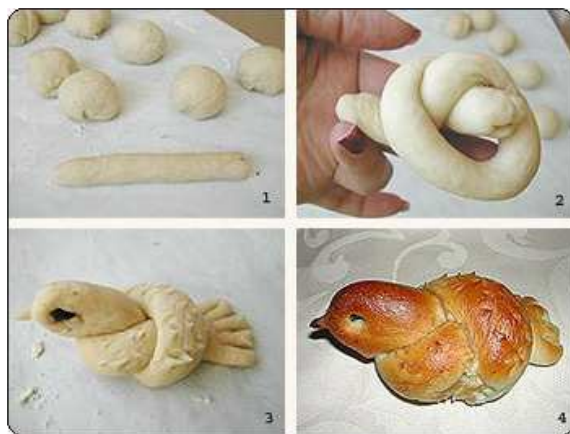
Mikk is going to the country today. He's going by bus. Mikk won't be in the country for long – a couple days. He'll do housework. Kadri is going on a field trip by car. Today there's a field trip to Tallinn, by bus.

Will you be in the library for long today? Where do you eat during the day/in the evening? Do you have a lot of housework? Do you go to the theater? Are you going on a field trip today? Are you going to the country?

**Exercise 14.** Write about yourself and your everyday life in Erzya (~100 words).

### VOCABULARY *Valks*

<i>átakš</i>	cockerel	<i>maksoms</i>	to give
<i>avam</i>	my mother	<i>mejle</i>	later
<i>azdan, a sodan</i>	I don't know	<i>million</i>	million
<i>beřaň</i>	bad	<i>ňile</i>	four
<i>čidardoms</i>	to bear, withstand	<i>pařam</i>	my older sister
<i>čas</i>	hour	<i>pařak</i>	hopefully, maybe
<i>čit</i>	in the daytime	<i>pele</i>	side, on the side
<i>čuro, -sto</i>	rare, -ly	<i>piče</i>	pine
<i>eš</i>	own	<i>pile</i>	ear
<i>-gak/-kak/-jak</i>	too, also	<i>prevej</i>	wise
<i>išća</i>	so, thus	<i>ramams</i>	to buy
<i>ije, -se</i>	year, years old	<i>sazorom</i>	my (younger) sister
<i>jalaksom</i>	my brother	<i>šeste</i>	then
<i>jam</i>	soup	<i>šado</i>	hundred
<i>kevksćems</i>	to ask	<i>sodams</i>	to know
<i>ki</i>	path, road	<i>sodamojovks</i>	riddle
<i>kize</i>	summer	<i>sulej</i>	shadow
<i>kunsoloms</i>	to listen	<i>ška</i>	time
<i>kurgo</i>	mouth	<i>iele</i>	winter
<i>kuvat(s)</i>	for a long time	<i>ietam</i>	my father
<i>lej</i>	river	<i>iev</i>	work
<i>lelam</i>	my older brother	<i>iožeň</i>	thousand
<i>lezdams</i>	to help	<i>vanoms</i>	to look, watch
<i>lotkams</i>	to stop, finish, cease	<i>vanta</i>	look!



Source: <http://uralistica.com/photo/erzjanj-norovzhorchketj?context=user>

## Unit 4 *Ňileće pelks*

### GRAMMAR

#### Definite Declension

The definite declension is used with referents that are specific and (usually) already known to the listener, similar to the use of the article *the* in English. Nominals in the definite declension have 10 cases, compared to 12 in the indefinite declension. For singular nominals, there are two ways of forming the definite declension.

1. Nominative, genitive and dative forms:

stem + definite declension marker + case ending

Nominative	-ś	<i>kudoś, veleş</i>
Genitive	-ńí	<i>kudońí, veleşńí</i>
Dative (= illative)	-ńí + -eń (< -ńeń)	<i>kudońíteń, veleşíteń</i>

2. Ablative, inessive, elative, prolative, comparative and abessive forms:

stem + case ending + definite declension marker -ńí

Ablative	-do /-de /-de /-to /-te /-te + -ńí	<i>kudodońí, veleşeńí</i>
Illative	(dative used instead)	
Inessive	-so /-se + -ńí	<i>kudosońí, veleşeńí</i>
Elative	-sto /-ste + -ńí	<i>kudostońí, veleşeńí</i>
Prolative	-va /-ga /-ka + -ńí	<i>kudovańí, veleşevańí</i>
Comparative	-ška + -ńí	<i>kudoškańí, veleşkańí</i>
Abessive	-vtomo /-tomo /-vteme /-teme / -teme + -ńí	<i>kudovtomońí, veleşvtemeńí</i>

The plural forms all have the same structure:

stem + definite declension marker -ńíe + case ending

Nom.	-ńíe	<i>kudońíe, veleşíe</i>
Gen.	-ńíe-ń	<i>kudońíeń, veleşíeń</i>
Dat.	-ńíe-ńeń	<i>kudońíeńeń, veleşíeńeń</i>
Abl.	-ńíe-de	<i>kudońíede, veleşíede</i>
Illat.	-ńíe-s	<i>kudońíes, veleşíes</i>
Iness.	-ńíe-se	<i>kudońíese, veleşíese</i>
Elat.	-ńíe-ste	<i>kudońíeste, veleşíeste</i>
Prolat.	-ńíe-va	<i>kudońíeva, veleşíeva</i>
Comp.	-ńíe-ška	<i>kudońíeška, veleşíeška</i>
Abess.	-ńíe-vteme	<i>kudońíevteme, veleşíevteme</i>

In words ending in *-do/-to/-de/-te/-go/-ko/-ge/-ke/-be/-pe/-že/-če/-mo/-me*, vowel elision takes place in the inessive and elative, singular and plural, in both the indefinite and definite declension: *śelme – śelm(e)s, śelm(e)ste, śelm(e)ńeste*. In other cases (nominative, genitive, dative, ablative etc.) the vowel is preserved; in one-syllable words, a linking vowel is inserted before the definite declension marker, e.g. *kal-o-ś, lej-e-ś*. After the consonants *g, k, d,* and *t*, the definite plural marker is *-tne* rather

than *-tíne*, e.g. *odtne, studenttne*. Some examples of definite declension forms of adjectives, pronouns, and numerals are presented below. Some words may not have comparative or other case forms.

Definite declension forms of the words *od, meže, vejke, kolmo*:

<i>odoš</i>	<i>mežeš</i>	<i>vejkeš</i>	<i>kolmoťne</i>
<i>odoňt</i>	<i>mežeňt</i>	<i>vejkeňt</i>	<i>kolmoťneň</i>
<i>odoňteň</i>	<i>mežeňteň</i>	<i>vejkeňteň</i>	<i>kolmoťneňeň</i>
<i>odtoňt</i>	<i>mežedeňt</i>	<i>vejkedeňt</i>	<i>kolmoťnede</i>
<i>odsoňt</i>	<i>mežeseňt</i>	<i>vejkeseňt</i>	<i>kolmoťnese</i>
<i>odstoňt</i>	<i>mežesteňt</i>	<i>vejkesteňt</i>	<i>kolmoťneste</i>
<i>odgaňt</i>	<i>meževažňt</i>	<i>vejkevažňt</i>	<i>kolmoťnevaž</i>
–	<i>mežeškaňt</i>	<i>vejkeškaňt</i>	–
<i>odtomoňt</i>	<i>meževťemeňt</i>	<i>vejkevťemeňt</i>	<i>kolmoťnevťeme</i>

**Exercise 1.** Give the definite declension forms (singular and plural) of the words *lej, pando, and kize*.

**Exercise 2.** Join the numerals 1, 3, 10, and 12 with the noun *kov* in the indefinite and definite declensions: *vejke kov /kovoš, kemeň kovt /kovtne*.

**Exercise 3.** Give the definite declension forms corresponding to the indefinite expressions below:

a) Indefinite singular – definite singular:

*mazij tejteř* ‘pretty girl’ – *mazij tejteřeš* ‘the pretty girls’

<i>pokš veľe</i> –	<i>teatraň biľet</i> –
<i>taňtej umar</i> –	<i>od mašina</i> –
<i>eš raškeň muzika</i> –	<i>šokšeň ška</i> –

b) Indefinite singular – definite plural:

*kudoš veľese* ‘the house is in the village’ – *kudoťne veľeseť* ‘the houses are in the village’

<i>tejteřeš piřese</i> –	<i>čoraš mašinaso</i> –
<i>lomaňeš pakšaso</i> –	<i>lekcijaš univeršitetse</i> –
<i>avaš kudoso</i> –	<i>studenteš kafeterijaso</i> –

### Comparative Forms of Adjectives and Adverbs

Adjectives and adverbs do not change form to convey the comparative or superlative degree. Comparative expressions are formed by combining a) the ablative form of the noun, adjective, or pronoun serving as the basis for comparison with b) the basic form of the adjective or adverb, e.g.:

<i>lomaňde prevej(-ste)</i>	smarter than a person,
<i>parodo paro(-sto)</i>	better than good,
<i>teňde mazij(-ste)</i>	more beautiful than this,
<i>seďe od(-sto)</i>	younger (than that).

The emphatic particle *-jak /-gak /-kak* may be added to the ablative form of the nominal serving as the basis for comparison:

<i>lomaňdejak prevej(-ste)</i>	even smarter than a person
<i>parodojak paro(-sto)</i>	even better than good
<i>teňdejak mazij(-ste)</i>	even more beautiful than this
<i>seďejak od(-sto)</i>	even younger than that.



When there is no specific item serving as the basis for comparison, the comparative degree is formed by the word *śede* (the ablative form of the pronoun *śe*), which precedes the adjective or adverb: *śede vasolo(-sto)* ‘further’, *śede paro(-sto)* ‘better’.

Comparisons can also be made using the adjective *końdamo* ‘like, similar’, which follows a noun in the genitive:

*umařen końdamo (mazij, tańtej)* ‘like an apple (beautiful, tasty)’,  
*pandoń końdamo (seřej)* ‘like a mountain (high)’.

The superlative degree is expressed by the pronoun *veše* ‘all’ in the ablative case, followed by the adjective or adverb in the nominative:

*vešemedo paro(-sto)* ‘the best, (in the best way)’.

**Exercise 4.** Use the words below to make comparative expressions, e.g.:

*śokśeś teledo lembe*  
*morams śedo mazijste*

Word list:

*tele, śokś, kize, tundo, ije – jakšamo, lembe, kuvaka, nuřkińe, mazij;*  
*morams, jarsams, tonavńhems, jakams, kortams – tańtejste, parosto, čurosto, vijejste.*

## CONVERSATION AND READING *Kortamo – lovnoma*

### *Erźatńede About the Erzyans*

<i>koda iśta</i>	how so
<i>eřavi meřems</i>	it has to be said
<i>teveš vana mejse</i>	the thing is (that...)
<i>tevtńe ľijat</i>	things are different
<i>Rav čirese</i>	on the bank of the Volga
<i>ulema, -t</i>	maybe, presumably (is, are)
<i>od škasto</i>	nowadays
<i>kolmoće peľks</i>	one third
<i>iśtań śńaro</i>	just as much
<i>Stopańize / Łovańize</i>	Stepan’s /Lyova’s wife (< <i>Stopa-</i> , <i>Łova-</i> + <i>ńi</i> ‘wife’+ <i>-ze</i> possessive)
<i>Dřigata</i>	Old Dřiga /Uncle Dřiga (< <i>Dřiga</i> + <i>ata</i> ‘old man’)

### TEXT 1

#### 1. *Erźatńeń lamočidest*

- *Śńaro erźatńede mastorsoní?*
- *Śeńde kijak parosto a sodi.*
- *Koda iśta?*
- *Teveš vana mejse. Ruzoń mastorso erźatńeń-mokšońeń lovit veise mordva raškeń ľemse. Ruzoń Federacijaso, ľija mastorga erźatńede-mokšońede uľemat 900 íožeńeń malava, erźań-mokšoń mastorsoní anśak kolmo śadoška íožeńí. Moskovso, Moskovoń peřka nej eřit 50-ška íožeńí erźat-mokšot. Od škastoní lamot tujit Moskovov. Pek lamo erźat-mokšot (100 íožeńede lamo) eřit Rav čirese. Estońijaso veľeška śadt erźat-mokšot. Iśtań śńaro uľemat Latvijasojak, Litvasojak.*

- *Sńaro erzat-mokšot erít Saranso?*
- *Alamot. Anśak kolmoće pełks veše erícańńeste.*
- *Šeste Saranoń erícańńe šede lamo kortiń ruzoń kełse?*
- *Iśta. Saranoń erzańńe-mokšońńe kortiń eś kełse anśak kudoso. Vełese íevíńe lįjat. Toso ejkakšńejak kortiń eś kełse, uliń erzań-mokšoń Ńkolatkak.*
- *Ruzoń Ńkolańńese erzań-mokšoń kełńeń a tonavńiń?*
- *Od Ńkastońńi kuva-kuva karmańńi tonavńńeme. Eravi meřems, odtne ěej karmańńi moramo eś morot erzań-mokšoń kełse. Siń Ńormadiń valt eś muzikań kořas.*
- *Kodamot fevńńe uniwersińetse?*
- *Uniwersińetse erzań, mokšoń kełńeń tonavńiń filologijań fakulńetse, koso uliń eś kełeń professort. Uli eś kełeń-kulturnań inšitutkak, lińiń publikańijań kełńede, istořijado, folklordo.*

**Exercise 5.** Listen and repeat. Audio: DS0169-19 ([www.murre.ut.ee/arhiv/naita.php?t=audio\\_trakk&id=4741](http://www.murre.ut.ee/arhiv/naita.php?t=audio_trakk&id=4741))

**Exercise 6.** Read in Erzya the numbers showing the size of ethnic groups living in the Republic of Mordovia (data from the year 2010; see [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mordovia#Ethnic\\_groups](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mordovia#Ethnic_groups)).

<i>Raškeńńe</i>	<i>Lamočist (tožeńse)</i>	<i>% procentse</i>
<i>erzat, mokšot</i>	333 112	40
<i>ruzt</i>	443 737	53
<i>tatart</i>	43 392	5
<i>ukrańńect</i>	4 801	0.5 ( <i>peł</i> )
<i>lińjatńe</i>	11 361	1.5 ( <i>vejke peł marto</i> )

**Exercise 7.** Ask questions concerning the population of your country. (Interrogative pronouns to be used in the questions: *sńaro, koso, meks, kije / kiń, kodamo, kona, kuva, mežeks.*)

#### TEXT 2

*Vełese. Šabrań avatńe piřeset. Siń kortit. Mikoł juti kivant.*

- Stopańńize Tě ćora-lomańeś kije?*
- Łovańńize Užo, íe Dřigań Mikoł.*
- Stopańńize Kańa son?*
- Łovańńize Son. Vanta, kodamo mazij ćoraś.*
- Stopańńize Mazij. Převejgak, tonavńi uniwersińetse.*
- Łovańńize Mařajak Saranso?*
- Stopańńize Saranso. Tonavńi erzań keł.*
- Łovańńize Tonavńi erzań keł? Vaj! Kańa erzań kełeń tonavńi uniwersińetse?*
- Stopańńize Keła, tonavńiń.*
- Łovańńize Er, íe paro, pek paro. Odtne ěej Saranso erzaks a kortiń.*
- Stopańńize Iśta. Erzań morotkak a moriń.*
- Łovańńize Tělevizorstojak erzań keł mařatano pek alamo.*
- Stopańńize Ton lovnat erzań gažett?*
- Łovańńize A lovnan. Siń stakat lovnoms.*

**Exercise 8.** Categorize statements in the text as referring to positive (*paro*) or negative (*a paro*) ideas:

<i>Paro</i>	<i>A paro</i>
<i>Mikoł ćoraś převej.</i>	...
...	...
...	...

**Exercise 9.** Fill in the blanks:

*Mikoľ kudoso* *Ťeiat-ćorat ... (are speaking).*  
*Dřigaća* *Ja, te ton, Mikoľ?*  
*Mikoľ* *(It's me).*  
*Dřigaća* *Bussto valgat?*  
*Mikoľ* *Bussto.*  
*Dřigaća* *Paro. Toň mařinas ... (new), veľeň kiťne beřaňt.*  
*Mikoľ* *Mařinasoňt ... (I go) stadionov, ... (sometimes) uniwersitetev.*  
*Dřigaća* *(How) fevtňe moľit?*  
*Mikoľ* *(So-so). Tiň koda?*  
*Dřigaća* *(We too) iřta. Tonavňat parosto?*  
*Mikoľ* *Parosto. Ťeťaj, meže ... (are we doing) feći?*  
*Dřigaća* *Ťevňe lamot. Vařna jarsatano. Ťeći moľtano ... (to the forest). ... (In the evening) uli baňa, řimtano puřede. Valske ulit tevt ... (in the field). Mikoľ Puřeř anak? Koso? Ťeťaj, koso kećeř?*

**Exercise 10.** Visit the following links: listen to the reporter's talks with the local people (children) and the guests who came to participate in an event in the village *Kivať*.

[www.youtube.com/watch?v=c0PIrm6s\\_RI&feature=relmfu](http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=c0PIrm6s_RI&feature=relmfu)

[www.youtube.com/watch?v=exS6yseEeSw&feature=relmfu](http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=exS6yseEeSw&feature=relmfu)

**Exercise 11.** Learn the names of the months and of some holidays:

<i>jakřamkov</i>	(< <i>jakřamo</i> )	January
<i>davolkov</i>	(< <i>davol</i> )	February
<i>ejžurkov</i>	(< <i>ej řuro</i> )	March
<i>ćadikov</i>	(< <i>ćadoms</i> )	April
<i>panžikov</i>	(< <i>panžoms</i> )	May
<i>ařtemkov</i>	(< <i>ařtems</i> )	June
<i>medkov</i>	(< <i>med</i> )	July
<i>umařkov</i>	(< <i>umař</i> )	August
<i>tařtamkov</i>	(< <i>tařtams</i> )	September
<i>ožokov</i>	(< <i>ožo</i> )	October
<i>suňdeřkov</i>	(< <i>suňdeřks</i> )	November
<i>acamkov</i>	(< <i>acams</i> )	December

*Rořtova* 'Christmas': *Paro Rořtova!* 'A merry (good) Christmas!'

*Od Ije* 'New Year': *Paro Od Ije!* 'A happy (good) New Year!'

*Ineći* 'Easter': *Paro Ineći* 'A good Easter!'

**Exercise 12.** Answer the questions:

*řnaro ijet pingeseňt?*

*řnaro kovt ijeseňt?*

*řnaro ĉit ijeseňt /kovsoňt?*

*Konat tundoň /kizeň / řokseň / teľeň kovtne?*

*Kona kovtnese 30/31 ĉi?*

*řnaro ĉit te ijeň davolkovsoňt?*

**Exercise 13.** Translate into Erzya:

It's summer, July. I'm going to Saaremaa, I'll be there for about ten days. This is the most beautiful place in Estonia. I'll stay at a friend's house there. We'll do garden and field work, in the evenings we'll be with other young people. We'll listen to and sing Saaremaa songs. Elderly people sing very well. The people of Saaremaa speak their own dialect (*kortavks*).

**Exercise 14.** Write about your summer plans (50 words).

**VOCABULARY** *Valks*

<i>anok</i>	ready	<i>lamoči</i>	multitude
<i>anšak</i>	only	<i>lẽmbe</i>	warm
<i>acams</i>	to cover, spread	<i>mala/so, -v, -va</i>	near, to near, by/along near
<i>aršems</i>	to think	<i>mařams</i>	to hear
<i>aštẽms</i>	to stay in place, be	<i>muzika</i>	music
<i>ata</i>	old man	<i>ńe, ńetńe</i>	these
<i>beřań</i>	bad	<i>nuřk/a, -ińe</i>	short
<i>bus</i>	bus	<i>panžoms</i>	to open
<i>čadoms</i>	to boil over, flow	<i>pinge</i>	lifetime, century
<i>čirẽ, -se</i>	bank/edge, on the bank	<i>puře</i>	kvass, mead
<i>čopoda</i>	dark	<i>převej</i>	wise
<i>čuro, -sto</i>	rare, -ly	<i>raške</i>	people
<i>davol</i>	storm	<i>šeh(-te)</i>	the most
<i>ejžuro</i>	icicle	<i>šejeđe</i>	dense
<i>eřavi</i>	is necessary (must)	<i>šejedste</i>	often
<i>eš</i>	own	<i>seřej</i>	tall
<i>eřiča</i>	inhabitant	<i>staka</i>	hard, difficult
<i>gažet</i>	magazine	<i>suńđerks</i>	dusk
<i>ije</i>	year	<i>šabra</i>	neighbour
<i>išak</i>	yesterday	<i>tańtej</i>	tasty
<i>jarmak</i>	money	<i>tarka</i>	place
<i>jakšamo</i>	cold, frost	<i>taštams</i>	to store
<i>jutams</i>	to pass by	<i>tundo</i>	spring
<i>kańa</i>	(oh) really	<i>tujems</i>	to leave
<i>karmams</i>	to begin	<i>uľema(-t)</i>	maybe, presumably
<i>kortavks</i>	dialect	<i>užo</i>	wait!
<i>keče</i>	ladle, dipper	<i>vaj</i>	oh
<i>keľa</i>	supposedly, they say	<i>val</i>	word
<i>ki</i>	path, road	<i>valgoms</i>	to land, come down
<i>kize</i>	summer	<i>veše</i>	all
<i>końdamo</i>	like, similar	<i>vešemeze</i>	everything/-one together
<i>kuvaka</i>	long	<i>veise</i>	together
<i>kuva-kuva</i>	in some places	<i>vijev, -ste</i>	strong, -ly

## Unit 5 Veteće pelks

### GRAMMAR

#### Infinitives

In addition to the *-ms* infinitive (the dictionary form of verbs), Erzya verbs also have a *-mo /-me* infinitive. The choice of which infinitive to use depends on the syntactic role of the infinitive expression as well as the semantic properties of the phrase it modifies. (Those learners familiar with Finnic languages will note that the Erzya *-ms* and *-mo/-me* infinitives correspond fairly well to the *-da* and *-ma* infinitives in Estonian, or to the first infinitive and third infinitive in Finnish).

*soda-ms, -mo* ‘to know’;  
*stuvto-ms, -mo* ‘to forget’;  
*meře-ms, -me* ‘to say’.

The table below provides examples of words which are typically used in conjunction with the *-ms* infinitive (1) as well as words typically used together with the *-mo/-me* infinitive (2).

1. <i>eřavi</i> ‘is necessary, must’, <i>sati</i> ‘is enough’, <i>meže</i> ‘what’, <i>kov</i> ‘where (to)’, <i>ška</i> ‘time’, <i>staka</i> ‘difficult’, <i>uli meže</i> ‘there is something’, <i>aras meže</i> ‘there is nothing’	a. <i>meřems</i> ‘to say’, <i>sodams</i> ‘to know’, <i>udoms</i> ‘to sleep’, <i>jarsams</i> ‘to eat’, <i>stuvtoms</i> ‘to forget’, <i>iejems</i> ‘to do, make’, <i>šormadoms</i> ‘to write’
2. <i>karmams /purnams</i> ‘to begin (doing something)’, <i>anokstams</i> ‘to prepare’, <i>moľems</i> ‘to go’, <i>sams</i> ‘to come’, <i>maštoms</i> ‘to know how to’, <i>tonadoms</i> ‘to get used to’	b. <i>moramo</i> ‘to sing’, <i>iejeme</i> ‘to do, make’, <i>lovnomo</i> ‘to read’, <i>sodamo</i> ‘to know’, <i>šormadomo</i> ‘to write’, <i>jarsamo</i> ‘to eat’, <i>kortamo</i> ‘to speak’, <i>kunsolomo</i> ‘to listen’, <i>tonavtneme</i> ‘to study, learn’

To generalize, the *-mo/-me* infinitive is mainly used when the infinitive phrase modifies a verb denoting an activity (*karmams, anokstams, moľems* etc.), while the *-ms* infinitive is used together with state verbs (*eřavi, sati*) as well as in predicative expressions.

**Exercise 1.** Make collocations from the words in the table above, e.g.:

- 1a: *eřavi meřems* ‘it must be said’;  
 2b: *karmams moramo* ‘to start singing’.

**Exercise 2.** Write the *-mo/-me* infinitive forms of the following words, paying attention to vowel harmony, e.g. *moľems, moľeme*. Then form collocations with them, e.g.: *eřavi moľems, karman moľeme*:

<i>ardoms, ardo-...</i>	<i>ojmšems, ojmše-...</i>
<i>kištoms, kište-...</i>	<i>panžoms, panžo-...</i>
<i>kodams, koda-...</i>	<i>šormadoms, šormado-...</i>
<i>kunsoloms, kunsolo-...</i>	<i>stuvtoms, stuvto-...</i>
<i>maštoms, mašto-...</i>	<i>tujems, tuje-...</i>
<i>morams, mora-...</i>	<i>valgoms, valgo-...</i>
<i>nejems, neje-...</i>	<i>večkems, večke-...</i>

**Exercise 3.** Translate the following verbal nouns (which all end in *-ma* or *-mo*), e.g.: *ardoma* riding, a ride; *kortamo* speaking, speech. Then write the *-ms* and *-mo /-me* infinitive forms of the corresponding verbs, e.g.: *ojmšema – ojmšems, ojmšeme*.

*ojmšema, panžoma, moramo, kištema, večkema, tujema, vikšhema, šormadoma, kunsoloma, šizema, sodamo.*

## Verb conjugation: present and past simple (preterite)

The stem vowels *a*, *o*, and *e* preceding the *-ms* infinitive ending are preserved in only a few present and past tense forms. In the present, for all verbs, the stem vowel is replaced by *a* in the first and second person singular and by *i* in the third person singular and plural. In the first and second person plural, the stem vowel *a* is preserved, but *o* and *e* are dropped, except in the case of verbs containing a derivational suffix, e.g. *lov-n-oms*, *tonavt-ń-ems* (see Unit 4).

Present tense forms:

	<i>soda-ms</i>	<i>lovno-ms</i>	<i>meře-ms</i>	<i>tonavtńe-ms</i>
<i>-a-n</i>	<i>sodan</i>	<i>lovnan</i>	<i>meřan</i>	<i>tonavtńan</i>
<i>-a-t</i>	<i>sodat</i>	<i>lovnat</i>	<i>meřat</i>	<i>tonavtńat</i>
<i>-i</i>	<i>sodi</i>	<i>lovní</i>	<i>meři</i>	<i>tonavtńi</i>
<i>-a/o/e-tano/-ńano</i>	<i>sodatano</i>	<i>lovnotano</i>	<i>meřńano</i>	<i>tonavtńeńano</i>
<i>-a/o/e-tado/-ńado</i>	<i>sodatado</i>	<i>lovnotado</i>	<i>meřńado</i>	<i>tonavtńeńado</i>
<i>-i-ń</i>	<i>sodiń</i>	<i>lovníń</i>	<i>meřiń</i>	<i>tonavtńiń</i>

The past simple, which expresses indefinite (finished or unfinished) past activity, is generally marked by the vowel *i*, followed by the appropriate personal endings (*-ń*, *-ń*, *-ń*, *-ńek*, *-ńe*, *-ńt*). The vowel *i* appears in all first- and second-person past tense forms. In the third person, the following rules apply:

- The stem vowel *a* is always preserved.
- The stem vowels *o* and *e* are preserved in verbs containing a derivational suffix, but are otherwise dropped.

Past simple forms:

	<i>soda-ms</i>	<i>lovno-ms</i>	<i>meře-ms</i>	<i>tonavtńe-ms</i>
<i>-i-ń</i>	<i>sodiń</i>	<i>lovníń</i>	<i>meřiń</i>	<i>tonavtńiń</i>
<i>-i-ń</i>	<i>sodiń</i>	<i>lovníń</i>	<i>meřiń</i>	<i>tonavtńiń</i>
<i>-a/-o/-e-ń</i>	<i>sodań</i>	<i>lovnoń</i>	<i>meřń</i>	<i>tonavtńeń</i>
<i>-i-ńek</i>	<i>sodińek</i>	<i>lovníńek</i>	<i>meřińek</i>	<i>tonavtńińek</i>
<i>-i-ńe</i>	<i>sodińe</i>	<i>lovníde</i>	<i>meřińe</i>	<i>tonavtńide</i>
<i>-a/-o/-e-ńt</i>	<i>sodańt</i>	<i>lovnońt</i>	<i>meřńt</i>	<i>tonavtńeńt</i>

The past simple forms of the verb *ulems* appear only in compound structures, combining with nouns, adjectives, numerals, pronouns and adjectives to form predicative expressions (just as in the present tense):

Nominal + *ulems* personal ending

present	<i>student-</i>	<i>koso-</i>	<i>velese-</i>	<i>mazij-</i>
<i>Mon</i>	<i>studentan</i>	<i>kosan</i>	<i>velesan</i>	<i>mazijan</i>
<i>Ton</i>	<i>studentat</i>	<i>kosat</i>	<i>velesat</i>	<i>mazijat</i>
<i>Son</i>	<i>student</i>	<i>koso</i>	<i>velese</i>	<i>mazij</i>
<i>Miń</i>	<i>studenttano</i>	<i>kosotano</i>	<i>velesetano</i>	<i>mazijtano</i>
<i>Tiń</i>	<i>studenttado</i>	<i>kosotado</i>	<i>velesetado</i>	<i>mazijtado</i>
<i>Siń</i>	<i>studentt</i>	<i>kosot</i>	<i>veleset</i>	<i>mazijt</i>

past	<i>student-</i>	<i>koso-</i>	<i>velese-</i>	<i>mazij-</i>
<i>Mon</i>	<i>studenteliñ</i>	<i>kosoliñ</i>	<i>veleseliñ</i>	<i>mazijeliñ</i>
<i>Ton</i>	<i>studenteliť</i>	<i>kosoliť</i>	<i>veleseliť</i>	<i>mazijeliť</i>
<i>Son</i>	<i>studentel</i>	<i>kosol</i>	<i>velesel</i>	<i>mazijel</i>
<i>Miñ</i>	<i>studenteliñek</i>	<i>kosoliñek</i>	<i>veleseliñek</i>	<i>mazijeliñek</i>
<i>Tiñ</i>	<i>studentelide</i>	<i>kosolide</i>	<i>veleselide</i>	<i>mazijelide</i>
<i>Siñ</i>	<i>studentelít</i>	<i>kosolít</i>	<i>veleselít</i>	<i>mazijelít</i>

The verb *úlems* does not have stand-alone past-tense forms as such. Instead, the past simple forms shown below are used: the suffix *-ñ-* in *ulñiñ*, *-ť*, *-s*, *-ñek*, *-đe*, *-sít* expresses both continuous and repeated action in the past. These forms are defective in that they lack the infinitive of a frequentative verb.

The examples below compare the use of the verb *úlems* in two different constructions expressing a state in the past: the forms *ulñiñ*, *-ť*, *-s*, *-ñek*, *-đe*, *-sít* serve for verbal predication while the personal endings of *úlems* affixed to an adverb appear in nominal predication. Note that the compound forms with *úlems* express only continuous past action, not repeated past action.

	repeated/continuous	continuous
<i>Mon</i>	<i>ulñiñ toso</i>	<i>tosoliñ</i>
<i>Ton</i>	<i>ulñiť toso</i>	<i>tosoliť</i>
<i>Son</i>	<i>ulñeś toso</i>	<i>tosol</i>
<i>Miñ</i>	<i>ulñiñek toso</i>	<i>tosoliñek</i>
<i>Tiñ</i>	<i>ulñide toso</i>	<i>tosolide</i>
<i>Siñ</i>	<i>ulñeśít toso</i>	<i>tosolít</i>

**Exercise 4.** Join the words in the left- and right-hand columns:

1	<i>Toomas</i>	a.	<i>kudosoliť</i>
2	<i>Mon</i>	b.	<i>kudosoliñ</i>
3	<i>Toomast-Annat</i>	c.	<i>kudosolide</i>
4	<i>Miñ</i>	d.	<i>kudosoliñek</i>
5	<i>Tiñ</i>	e.	<i>kudosolít</i>
6	<i>Ton</i>	f.	<i>kudosol</i>

**Exercise 5.** Discuss what you did yesterday, using the following questions as prompts:

*Meže tejiť išak? Kov jakiť? Koso jarsiť?  
Kodamo škasto (ulñiť, jakiť/molitiť, jarsiť) ...?  
Jakiť kovgak čokšne? Vanitiť televizor? Meže nejiť?*

**Exercise 6.** Speak about what someone else (a friend, family member, famous person) did yesterday.

10-13	<i>ulems bibliotekaso, seminarso, ...</i>
13-14	<i>jarsams(-tejems) ... (kafeterijaso), ...</i>
14-18	<i>ulems /molems /jakams (lekčija-, ...)</i>
18-19	<i>jarsams kudoso, ...</i>
<i>čokšne</i>	<i>vanoms TV, molems klubov, ...</i>

## Declension of Cardinal and Ordinal Numerals

Ordinal numerals are formed from cardinal numerals by adding the ending *-će*. The words for ‘first’ and ‘second’, however, are based on other stems: *vejke* – *vašeńće* ‘one – first’ (*vaš-ńa* ‘at the beginning’) and *kavto* – *omboće* ‘two – second’ (*ombo* ‘other’, *ombo mastor* ‘foreign country’).

<i>vejke</i> one <i>kavto</i> two	<i>vaš-e-ń-će</i> first <i>ombo-će</i> second
<i>kolmo</i> three <i>kemeń</i> four <i>komś</i> twenty <i>śado</i> a hundred <i>íožeń</i> a thousand	<i>kolmo-će</i> third <i>kemeń-će</i> tenth <i>komś-e-će</i> twentieth <i>śado-će</i> hundredth <i>íožeń-će</i> thousandth

Forms of *ulems* can be added to numerals as well: *vašeńčan* /*vašeńćeliń* ‘I am / I was first’. Cardinal and ordinal numerals may appear in both the indefinite and definite declensions:

*vejke, -ń, -ńeń, -de, -se, -ste, -ška, -vıeme;*  
*vejkeś, -ńt, -ńteń, -deńt, -seńt, -steńt, -škańt, -vıemeńt;*  
*omboće, -ń, -ńeń, -de, -se, -ste, -ška, -vıeme;*  
*omboćeś, -ńt, -ńteń, -deńt, -seńt, -steńt, -škańt, -vıemeńt.*

**Exercise 7.** Fill in the blanks, using the expressions below:

(*omboće čisteńt, nıleće lomańeś, kolmoće kursoś, vašeńće ijesteńt, ombo mastorso*).

- a) ... *ulńeś Kadri*.
- b) ... *miń ulńińek Helsinkise*.
- c) ... *mon ulńiń a kuvať*.
- d) ... *ulńeś staka*.
- e) ... *tese ulńeśt lamo studentt*.

## CONVERSATION AND READING *Kortamo – lovnoma*

### In the country and in the city *Velese – ośso*

<i>mon meńiń</i>	I said (also: I assumed)
<i>si ijeste</i> ( <i>si: sams</i> ‘to come’)	next (coming) year
<i>ińeći</i> <i>taśto/siře/umokoń:</i> <i>taśto kudo</i> <i>siře lomań</i> <i>umokoń ŝka</i>	Easter old: old house old person old, ancient time
<i>mo-/ma-</i> verbal nouns: <i>eřams: eřamo</i> <i>učoms: učoma</i> <i>arśems: arśema</i> <i>eřamo /učoma /arśema + -ś, -ıńe</i> ( <i>eřamo /učoma /arśema + -m, -t, etc.</i> )	living/life waiting/wait thinking/thought = definite declension = possessive declension



## TEXT 1

*Mikol'Ľosat bussot, siñ korti'. Mikol' školado mejle tuś tonavtheme Saranov. Eri toso omboće ije. Ľijatkak tuś velesteñ'. Veleś pokšoĽ, nej lomaññe toso alamat.*

- Mikol' Saranov moĽat, Ľosa?*  
*Ľosa AvoĽ, Tavlav. MoĽan ľelañeñ. Son eri Tavlaso, ľejś od kudo. Mon meñiñ, ton Saransat.*  
*Mikol' Saransan, nej kolmoška Ľi' ulñiñ kudoso.*  
*Ľosa Koda tonavthemaś moĽi?*  
*Mikol' Parosto. Ton nejgak velesat?*  
*Ľosa Velesan. Si ijeste tujan Moskovov tonavtheme.*  
*Mikol' Od lomaññe lamot velesent'?*  
*Ľosa Alamat. Kemeñška ulñano – mon, Taťu, Mihaloñ Šoma, Kiřoñ Nasta, kiť-kiť ľijat.*  
*Mikol' Meze jala tejtado?*  
*Ľosa Kizna, šokśña viřeñ-pakśañ ľevñe lamolť. Teľña ulñeś ška ojmsems. Nej si IneĽiś – tundoñ parodojak paro škaś.*  
*Mikol' Jakatado klubov?*  
*Ľosa Šňardo-šňardo jakatano. Vantano kino, ľejťano koncert. Siť od lomañť ľija veletñestejak, kiťťano-moratano. Ton jakat kovgak Saranso?*  
*Mikol' Škaś jakams alamo. Moran studenteñ folkgruppasso, jakan sportoñ zalov, kosto-kosto teatravgak.*  
*Ľosa Eřamoś Saranso a beřañ. Ja, mon nej ľese valgan. Eřiśik!*  
*Mikol' Tongak! Šumbrasto!*

**Exercise 8.** Answer the questions:

- Kosto si Mikol'? Kov moĽi Ľosa busso?*  
*Šňaro od lomañť eřiť velesteñ'?*  
*Koda eřiť od lomaññe velese? Meze siñ ľejit ijeñ peřť?*  
*Koso siñ vaniť kino?*  
*Koda eri Mikol' Saranso?*  
*Meks lamo od lomañť tuś velesteñ'?*  
*Kov tuji Ľosa si ijeste?*

**Exercise 9.** Visit the following link: the video clip shows the festival *Mastorava* (Mother of the Earth) held in the village of *Kľavlino*. Listen to the Erzya songs in the clip.

[www.youtube.com/watch?v=U39rC73CNSQ&feature=plcp](http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=U39rC73CNSQ&feature=plcp)

## TEXT 2

*Univerśitet: umokoñ – nejjeñ škañ*

- Koso tonavťnat?*
- Tartuñ Univerśitetse.*
- Mon sodan, te univerśiteteś umokoñ.*
- Pek umokoñ, paņžoź 1632-će ijeste. Vaśña ulñeś a pokś, 4 fakulťetse. Nej son jala kasi. Univerśitetsent 9 fakulťett, 17 000-đe lamo studentt, 1 700 tonavťiĽat. Koso ton tonavťnat?*
- Mon tonavťnan Mordovijañ Univerśitetse. Te univerśiteteś od. 1931 ijeste 1957 ijes son ulñeś institut, mejle – univerśitet. Nej toso 9 fakulťett, koso tonavťniť 20 000-đe lamo studentt. Teśejak 1 700 tonavťiĽat.*

**Exercise 10.** Listen and repeat. Audio: DS0169-20 ([www.murre.ut.ee/arhiv/naita.php?t=audio\\_trakk&id=4742](http://www.murre.ut.ee/arhiv/naita.php?t=audio_trakk&id=4742))

**Exercise 11.** Fill the table below based on the text above.

	<i>Tartu Ühiversiteteś</i>	<i>Mordovijañ Ühiversiteteś</i>
<i>Sñardo panžoź</i>		
<i>Sñaro fakultetse</i>		
<i>Sñarot studenttne</i>		
<i>Sñarot tonavtičatñe</i>		

**Exercise 12.** Answer the questions, then compose a short text (several sentences) about yourself.

*Sñardo šačit' ? – (tunda / kizna / šoksña / íelña).*

*Kodamo ijeste / kovsto / čiste šačit' ? – (e.g. 16.05.1958: íožeñ vejksesadt veđgemen kavsoče ijeñ panžikovoñ kemgotovoče čiste).*

*Sñardo (kodamo ijeste) karmiñ tonavñeme školaso /ühiversitetse?*

*Kodamo ijeste jakit' ombo mastorov?*

*Sñardo siť eřamo Tartuv? Sñaro ijeť eřat Tartuso?*

**Exercise 13.** Translate into Erzya:

I'm living in Tartu the first year. I'm studying at the University of Tartu, where there are about 17000 students. There are students here from Finland, Hungary, Russian, Sweden, and Germany. I study Finno-Ugric languages. I go to seminars on Finnish, Hungarian, Erzya and Mari. I listen to lectures. In the evening I rest at home, sometimes I go to the theater, to a cafe or to a discotheque. Yesterday I went to Tallinn with a friend. We were on a field trip. Tallinn is bigger than Tartu. We saw many beautiful places. During the day we ate in a cafe. We went back to Tartu at 7:00 in the evening. We were home at 9:00. We watched TV and talked about what we saw in Tallinn. In the summer we're going to Finland to learn Finnish.

### VOCABULARY *Valks*

<i>anokstams</i>	to prepare	<i>peřt</i>	through
<i>ardoms</i>	to ride	<i>pokš</i>	big
<i>eřavi</i>	is necessary, must	<i>prevči</i>	wiseness
<i>ikele</i>	earlier	<i>prevej</i>	wise
<i>Iñeči</i>	Easter	<i>purñams</i>	to gather
<i>išak</i>	yesterday	<i>sams</i>	to come
<i>ja</i>	well; oh	<i>satoms</i>	to suffice
<i>jala</i>	still, even	<i>šoksña</i>	in autumn
<i>kaña</i>	(oh) really	<i>šormadoms</i>	to write
<i>karmams</i>	to begin	<i>sñardo</i>	when
<i>kasoms</i>	to grow (v.i.)	<i>sñardo-sñardo</i>	sometimes
<i>keľa</i>	supposedly	<i>staka, -sto</i>	hard, -ly
<i>kizna</i>	in summer	<i>stuvtoms</i>	to forget
<i>kištems</i>	to dance	<i>tarka</i>	place
<i>klub</i>	club	<i>íelña</i>	in winter
<i>kunsoloms</i>	to listen	<i>tonadoms</i>	to get used/accustomed to
<i>leľa</i>	older brother, uncle	<i>tujems</i>	to leave
<i>maksoms</i>	to give	<i>tunda</i>	in spring
<i>mařams</i>	to hear	<i>udoms</i>	to sleep
<i>maštoms</i>	to know, be able to	<i>umok, -oñ</i>	long ago, way back
<i>marto</i>	with	<i>vaj</i>	oh
<i>meľat</i>	last year	<i>valmeřevks</i>	proverb
<i>meřems</i>	to say	<i>valgoms</i>	to land, come down
<i>ojmšems</i>	to rest	<i>vašeñce</i>	first
<i>ombo mastor</i>	foreign country	<i>vašña</i>	at first
<i>omboče</i>	second	<i>večkems</i>	to love
<i>panžo/ms, -ž</i>	to open, -ed	<i>vikšñems</i>	to crochet, embroider

## Unit 6 *Kotoće pełks*

### GRAMMAR

#### The Possessive Declension

The possessive declension expresses relationships of belonging. Possessive suffixes added to nominals in Erzya perform the same function as possessive pronouns (*my, your, our*, etc.) or the 's/-s' ending in English. The definite and indefinite declension nominals are marked for number and receive case endings; nominals in the possessive declension are also marked for the person and number of the possessor. Unlike in the indefinite and definite declensions, where the plural markers are *-t/-t'* and *-tne /-tńe* respectively, the possessive declension does not have a separate plural marker; number is expressed through the possessive suffixes themselves.

The possessive declension may be used in combination with the possessive pronouns *moń, toń, sonze, mińek, tink, sinst* (the genitive case forms of the personal pronouns *mon, ton, son, miń, tiń, siń*). For example: *moń pańam* 'my older sister', *sonze łeńazo* 'his older brother'.

Possessive declension markers:

Possessor in the singular, possessed in the singular/plural

One possessed item	<i>moń</i> my <i>-m</i>	<i>toń</i> your (sg.) <i>-t/-t'</i>	<i>sonze</i> his/her/its <i>-zo/-ze</i>
Multiple possessed items	<i>moń</i> my <i>-n/-ń</i>	<i>toń</i> your (sg.) <i>-t/-t'</i>	<i>sonze</i> his/her/its <i>-nzo/-nze</i>

Possessor in the plural, possessed in the singular/plural

One possessed item	<i>minek</i> our <i>-nok/-ńek</i>	<i>tink</i> your (pl.) <i>-nk</i>	<i>sinst</i> their <i>-st</i>
Multiple possessed items	<i>minek</i> our <i>-nok/-ńek</i>	<i>tink</i> your (pl.) <i>-nk</i>	<i>sinst</i> their <i>-st</i>

As can be seen from the tables above, singular and plural possessed items (e.g. *my book* vs. *my books*) are distinguished only for first and third person singular possessors. In some dialects, the distinction is lost for first person singular possessors as well – *-m* marks both singular and plural possessed items, e.g. *sazorom* 'my sister(s)'.

Examples: *sur* 'finger', *keď* 'händ', *śełme* 'eye' (stems ending in a consonant receive a linking vowel before the possessive endings):

a) my, your (sg.), his /her /its (one possessed item)

<i>-m</i>	<i>-t/-t'</i>	<i>-zo/-ze</i>
<i>surom</i>	<i>surot</i>	<i>surozo</i>
<i>keďem</i>	<i>keďeť</i>	<i>keďeze</i>
<i>śełmem</i>	<i>śełmeť</i>	<i>śełmeze</i>

b) my, your (sg.), his /her /its (multiple possessed items)

<i>-n/-ń (-m)</i>	<i>-t/-t'</i>	<i>-nzo/-nze</i>
<i>suron (m)</i>	<i>surot</i>	<i>suronzo</i>
<i>keďeń (m)</i>	<i>keďeť</i>	<i>keďenze</i>
<i>śełmeń (m)</i>	<i>śełmeť</i>	<i>śełmenze</i>

c) our, your (pl.), their (one or more possessed items)

<i>-nok/-ńek</i>	<i>-nk</i>	<i>-st</i>
<i>suronok</i>	<i>suronk</i>	<i>surost</i>
<i>keďeńek</i>	<i>keďenk</i>	<i>keďest</i>
<i>śełmeńek</i>	<i>śełmenk</i>	<i>śełmest</i>

The number of the possessed item(s) can often be determined from context, for example based on whether the verb or negation word appears in the singular or plural (*uńi, uńiń; araś, araśń*).

Example:

a) have / don't have a friend:

b) have / don't have friends:

<i>Moń uńi / araś jalgam.</i>	<i>Moń uńiń / araśń jalgan (-m).</i>
<i>Toń uńi / araś jalgat.</i>	<i>Toń uńiń / araśń jalgat.</i>
<i>Sonze uńi / araś jalgazo.</i>	<i>Sonze uńiń / araśń jalganzo.</i>
<i>Mińek uńi / araś jalganok.</i>	<i>Mińek uńiń / araśń jalganok.</i>
<i>Tink uńi / araś jalgank.</i>	<i>Tink uńiń / araśń jalgank.</i>
<i>Sinst uńi / araś jalgast.</i>	<i>Sinst uńiń / araśń jalgast.</i>

### Possessive Declension Forms

Nominals in the possessive declension may appear in a total of eight cases: nominative, ablative, inessive, elative, illative, prolativ, comparative, and abessive. Kinship terms have only three case forms – nominative, genitive, and dative with the possessors *moń / toń / sonze* and only nominative with the possessors *mińek / tink / sinst*. As in the other declensions, the appearance of words in the various case forms depends greatly on the semantic properties of the word being declined. Relatively few words can appear in the comparative or abessive. With the possessor *sonze*, the ending *-zo / -ze* appears only in the nominative singular; in the other cases the ending *-nzo / -nze* is used. Possessive declension forms are constructed as follows:

stem + case ending + possessive declension marker

	<i>moń</i>	<i>toń</i>	<i>sonze</i>	<i>mińek</i>	<i>tink</i>	<i>sinst</i>
Nom.	sg.: <i>-m</i>	<i>-t/-ń</i>	<i>-zo/-ze</i>	<i>-nok/-ńek</i>	<i>-nk</i>	<i>-st</i>
	pl.: <i>-n/-ń</i>	<i>-t/-ń</i>	<i>-nzo/-nze</i>	<i>-nok/-ńek</i>	<i>-nk</i>	<i>-st</i>
Gen.	<i>-ń</i>	<i>-ń</i>	<i>-nzo/-nze</i>	–	–	–
Dat.	<i>-ńeń</i>	<i>-teń</i>	<i>-nsteń</i>	–	–	–
Abl.	<i>-dom, -n</i>	<i>-dot</i>	<i>-donzo</i>	<i>-donok</i>	<i>-donk</i>	<i>-dost</i>
	<i>-ďem, -ń</i>	<i>-ďeń</i>	<i>-ďenze</i>	<i>-ďeńek</i>	<i>-ďenk</i>	<i>-ďest</i>
	<i>-dem, -ń</i>	<i>-deń</i>	<i>-denze</i>	<i>-deńek</i>	<i>-denk</i>	<i>-dest</i>
	<i>-tom, -n</i>	<i>-tot</i>	<i>-tonzo</i>	<i>-tonok</i>	<i>-tonk</i>	<i>-tost</i>
	<i>-ťem, -ń</i>	<i>-teń</i>	<i>-ťenze</i>	<i>-teńek</i>	<i>-tenk</i>	<i>-ťest</i>
	<i>-tem, -ń</i>	<i>-teń</i>	<i>-tenze</i>	<i>-teńek</i>	<i>-tenk</i>	<i>-test</i>
Iness.	<i>-som, -n</i>	<i>-sot</i>	<i>-sonzo</i>	<i>-sonok</i>	<i>-sonk</i>	<i>-sost</i>
	<i>-sem, -ń</i>	<i>-seń</i>	<i>-senze</i>	<i>-seńek</i>	<i>-senk</i>	<i>-sest</i>
Elat.	<i>-stom, -n</i>	<i>-stot</i>	<i>-stonzo</i>	<i>-stonok</i>	<i>-stonk</i>	<i>-stost</i>
	<i>-stem, -ń</i>	<i>-steń</i>	<i>-stenze</i>	<i>-steńek</i>	<i>-stenk</i>	<i>-stest</i>
Illat.	( <i>s &gt; ź</i> )					
	<i>-zom, -n</i>	<i>-zot</i>	<i>-zonzo</i>	<i>-zonok</i>	<i>-zonk</i>	<i>-zost</i>
	<i>-zem, -ń</i>	<i>-zeń</i>	<i>-zenze</i>	<i>-zeńek</i>	<i>-zenk</i>	<i>-zest</i>

	<i>moň</i>	<i>toň</i>	<i>sonze</i>	<i>miňek</i>	<i>tink</i>	<i>sinst</i>
Prolat.	-vam, -n -gam, -n -kam, -n	-vat -gat -kat	-vanzo -ganzo -kanzo	-vanok -ganok -kanok	-vank -gank -kank	-vast -gast -kast
Comp.	-škam, -n	-škat	-škanzo	-škanok	-škank	-škast
Abess.	-vtomom, -n -víemem, -ń -tomom, -n -íemem, -ń -temem, -ń	-vtomot -víemeť -tomot -íemeť -temeť	-vtomonzo -víemenze -tomonzo -íemenze -temenze	-vtomonok -víemeňek -tomonok -íemeňek -temenek	-vtomonk -víemenk -tomonk -íemenk -temenk	-vtomost -víemest -tomost -íemest -temest

Examples:

singular, plural (-n/-ń) forms:

a. Body parts:

	<i>moň</i>	<i>toň</i>	<i>sonze</i>	<i>miňek</i>	<i>tink</i>	<i>sinst</i>
Nom.	<i>prám</i> <i>pilem, -ń</i>	<i>prát</i> <i>pileť</i>	<i>prázo</i> <i>pileze, -nze</i>	<i>pránok</i> <i>pileňek</i>	<i>pránk</i> <i>pilenk</i>	<i>prást</i> <i>pilest</i>
Abl.	<i>prádom</i> <i>piledem, -ń</i>	<i>prádot</i> <i>piledeť</i>	<i>prádonzo</i> <i>piledenze</i>	<i>prádonok</i> <i>piledeňek</i>	<i>prádonk</i> <i>piledenk</i>	<i>prádost</i> <i>piledest</i>
Iness.	<i>prásom</i> <i>pilesem, -ń</i>	<i>prásot</i> <i>pileseť</i>	<i>prásonzo</i> <i>pilesenze</i>	<i>prásonok</i> <i>pileseňek</i>	<i>prásonk</i> <i>pilesenk</i>	<i>prásost</i> <i>pilesest</i>
Elat.	<i>prástom</i> <i>pilestem, -ń</i>	<i>prástot</i> <i>pilesteť</i>	<i>prástonzo</i> <i>pilestenze</i>	<i>prástonok</i> <i>pilesteňek</i>	<i>prástonk</i> <i>pilestenk</i>	<i>prástost</i> <i>pilestest</i>
Illat.	<i>prázom</i> <i>pilezem, -ń</i>	<i>prázot</i> <i>pilezeť</i>	<i>prázonzo</i> <i>pilezenze</i>	<i>prázonok</i> <i>pilezeňek</i>	<i>prázonk</i> <i>pilezenk</i>	<i>prázost</i> <i>pilezest</i>
Prolat.	<i>právam</i> <i>pilevam, -n</i>	<i>právat</i> <i>pilevat</i>	<i>právanzo</i> <i>pilevanzo</i>	<i>právanok</i> <i>pilevanok</i>	<i>právank</i> <i>pilevank</i>	<i>právast</i> <i>pilevast</i>

b. Kinship terms:

	<i>moň</i>	<i>toň</i>	<i>sonze</i>	<i>miňek</i>	<i>tink</i>	<i>sinst</i>
Nom.	<i>sazorom, -n</i> <i>tejteřem, -ń</i>	<i>sazorot</i> <i>tejteřeť</i>	<i>sazorozo, -nzo;</i> <i>tejteřeze, -nze</i>	<i>sazoronok</i> <i>tejteřeňek</i>	<i>sazoronk</i> <i>tejteřenk</i>	<i>sazorost</i> <i>tejteřest</i>
Gen.	<i>sazoroň</i> <i>tejteřeň</i>	<i>sazorot</i> <i>tejteřeť</i>	<i>sazoronzo</i> <i>tejteřenze</i>			
Dat.	<i>sazoroneň</i> <i>tejteřeňeň</i>	<i>sazoroteň</i> <i>tejteřeťeň</i>	<i>sazoronsteň</i> <i>tejteřensteň</i>			

Different parts of speech – nouns (especially names of body parts, kinship terms, and verbal nouns), pronouns and numerals, postpositions, and non-finite verb forms (including participles) – may appear in the possessive declension, e.g.:

*škamo-m, -t, -nzo, -nok, -nk, -st* (< *eš-* + *-ka* prolative + *-mo*) ‘(I /you /he /she / we /you /they) alone’;  
*moľe-mste-m, -ť, -nze, -ňek, -nk, -st* (*-mste-* gerund) ‘while going’;  
*marto-m, -t, -nzo, -nok, -nk, -st* ‘with, together with me, you, etc’.

The nouns *či* ‘day, sun’ and *ška* ‘time’ appear in the possessive declension in the following expressions: *čize ľisś* ‘the sun rose (= came out)’; *škazo sas* ‘the time came’; *śnaro škazo?* ‘what time is it (how much time is there)?’

**Exercise 1.** Match the English phrases on the left with their Erzya equivalents on the right:

His seminars	<i>šeminaron</i>
Our seminar	<i>šeminarot</i>
Your (sg.) seminars	<i>šeminaronok</i>
My seminar	<i>šeminaronk</i>
Their seminars	<i>šeminarozo</i>
Her seminar	<i>šeminarost</i>
My seminars	<i>šeminarom</i>
Your (pl.) seminar	<i>šeminaronzo</i>

**Exercise 2.** Fill in the blanks with the vowel *o* or *e*:

- keđ...m, sur...t, čeř...m, san...t, pej...m;*
- mastor...zo, ľej...ze, viř...ze, uñiversitet...ze;*
- jalaks...nok, ľem...ňek, sazor...nok;*
- skal...nk, saraz...nk, řev...nk, pursoz...nk;*
- pileks...st, eřg...st, surks...st, pulaj...st.*

**Exercise 3.** Add the correct possessive ending (*-zo/-ze, -nzo/-nze*):

- keđ, sur, piľge, sudo, kenže, prá, keľ, mešte, piľe;*
- lomaň, sazor, ľeľa, paťa, tejteř, uřaž, pariija;*
- surks, piľeks, eřge, šulgamo, kem, karť-prakstat.*

**Exercise 4.** The following word pairs denote possessor and possessed (in singular or plural). Form possessive noun phrases from them, e.g.: *ćora – kudo > ćoraňt kudozo.*

Singular – singular	Singular – plural	Plural – plural
<i>ava – paća</i>	<i>ćora – kemť</i>	<i>studeňt – šeminart</i>
<i>studeňt – jalga</i>	<i>tejteř – čeřť</i>	<i>ejkakšt – kudot</i>
<i>raške – eřamo</i>	<i>ťeta – ejkakšt</i>	<i>eřzavat – pulajť</i>
<i>uřaž – pariija</i>	<i>odiřva – eřgť</i>	<i>lomaňt – aršemat</i>

**Exercise 5.** Answer the question *Sňaro škazo?* ‘What time is it?’

- |                     |                         |                         |
|---------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Sňaro škazo?</i> | – 12 časst, 17 minutat. | – 11 časst, 38 minutat. |
|                     | – 9 časst, 25 minutat.  | – 7 časst, 50 minutat.  |
|                     | – 1 čas, 15 minutat.    | – 8 časst, 49 minutat.  |



Source: [www.goloserzi.ru/ru/tvorchestvo/fotografija/slugin-aleksandr-yakovlevich2/albom-1.html?autoopen=1&autoopen-image=56](http://www.goloserzi.ru/ru/tvorchestvo/fotografija/slugin-aleksandr-yakovlevich2/albom-1.html?autoopen=1&autoopen-image=56)

## CONVERSATION AND READING *Kortamo – lovnoma*

### *Kudoraške Family*

<i>Ílušínkat</i> (-ínkat indicates a family)	the Ilushin family
<i>alo /veře pe</i>	lower / upper end (of a village)
<i>sńars</i>	until
<i>meřems íemse</i>	to address by name
<i>líšems mířdeńeń</i>	to get married (for women)
<i>urvakstoms</i>	to get married (for men)
<i>satoms: satoška</i>	to be enough: enough
<i>ulí-paro</i>	fortune, possessions
<i>tujems ruzavaks</i>	to give up traditional clothing (to be Russified)
<i>lamońe-ńek, -nk, -st</i>	many together
<i>kolmońe-ńek, -nk, -st</i>	three (of us, you, them) together

### TEXT 1

*Ílušínkat eraší alo pese. Íluš, líjaks meřems Ílija, umok kuloš, kudoraškeńt íemeš jala ulńes íeke. Tašto kudosońt tago-sńardo eraší lamońest, kevećeješkast, nej anšak Ohřematań nńnze marto škamost. Kolmo čorast urvakšší, tuší eramo od tarkav. Čoratiněń kudost ulńeší veře pese. Teíst-avast maksší čoratiněńeń řeveí, pursozt, sarazt. Skalost ulńes vejke. Šede tov čoratinějak ramaší skalt. Čoratiněń ejkakšost lamolí. Sńars teíst-avast ulńeší viřse-pakšaso, siřetńe ašteší ejkakšneń marto. Tejterest vejkeí. Komś ijese son líšš mířdeńeń šabra velev. Mířdeš ulńes převej paro čora. Iješka siń eraší vejse atavtońt-avavtońt marto, mejle tuší tonavtńeme Saranov. Atavtońt-avavtońt kudost poksol, uli-paroš kudosońt satoškaí. Odtne eraší kizna velese. Škań jutaž siń ramaší mašina, šede tov Saranso ramaší kudo. Ejkakšost ulńeší kavto – vašeńćeš čorińe, omboćeš tejterka.*

**Exercise 6.** Listen and repeat. Audio: DS0169-21 ([www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv/naita.php?t=audio\\_trakk&id=4743](http://www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv/naita.php?t=audio_trakk&id=4743))

**Exercise 7.** Answer the questions:

*Sńarońest eraší Ílušínkat?  
Sńaro čorast-tejterest ulńeší Ohřematań nńnze marto?  
Kije kudoraškeńeste tuš eramo od kudov?  
Kov líšš mířdeńeń tejterest?  
Meks tejtereš mířdenze marto tuší Saranov?  
Siń seske ramaší mašina?*

### TEXT 2

*Šede ikele erzatńe eraší lamońest. Kudoraškeks ulńeší pokštatńe, tetatńe-avatńe, odtne ejkakšost marto. Avatńe-tetatńe meřší čorast nńńteń urva. Veženće čorań nńńteń meřší urvine, peńerva. Čorańt sazoronzo, jalaksonzo meřší leíast nńńteń uráž. Uražoš meřš mířdenze sazortneńeń pariya. Pataj, leíaj meřší veženćetńe šede pokš tejterńeńeń-čoratiněńeń. Veleń eřičatńe, šede siřetńe, nejgak meřit íšta, avol íemse. Avaj, teíaj – íšta pškadiń nejěń škastojak ejkakšme avansteń-tetansteń.*

**Exercise 8.** Explain the following kinship terms:

Term:	Explanation:
<i>atavt-avavt</i>	
<i>urva, urvine, peńerva</i>	
<i>uráž, pariya</i>	
<i>pata, leía</i>	

TEXT 3

*Erzavaťneň oršamost pek mazijelít. Avaťne kodať ašo kock, vikšneť koctoňť jakťere, seň ponasuťese. Langsost ulneť panar, ruća, pulaj. Erzavaň práso ulneť pango, pílevanzo – pílekst, kirgavanzo – erťt, meťsesenze – šulgamo, kedťganzo – kedťkst, surkst. Pílgesenze ulneť karť-prakstat, pokť čiste – kemť. Šede tov erzavaťne karmasť oršamo líjaks – siň „tuť ruzavaks”.*

**Exercise 9.** Visit the following links: view the photos illustrating the tradition of Erzya folk costume.

<http://purgine.livejournal.com/tag/%D0%9A%D0%BE%D1%81%D1%82%D1%8E%D0%BC>

<http://www.goloserzi.ru/ru/etnos/kostyum/>

**Exercise 10.** On what parts of the body are the following items worn?

<i>panar, ruća, pulaj – langso</i>	<i>šulgamo –</i>
<i>pango –</i>	<i>kedťkst –</i>
<i>pílekst –</i>	<i>surks –</i>
<i>erťt –</i>	<i>karť-prakstat, kemť –</i>

**Exercise 11.** Fill in the blanks:

*Moň léme... Ann, mon eston...n. Eťan Tartuso, íetam-avam erít Tallinn.... Moň uli sazoro..., léme... Kadi. Son erí Vengrija..., toso son nej tonavťní. Sazoro... pek převej. Ije... 22. Mon 19 ijese...n. Tétam-avam jakít Vengrija... téľňa, mon jakan tov kizna. Vengrija... mazij mastor. Toso lembe kizeňek-íeleňek. Sazoro... marto Vengrijaso jarsa... keršeť sivelde (léme... guľaš). Pokšťam-babam síreť. Pokšťam 80 ijese, babam – 75-se. Siň erít Tallinneň malaso. Uli vasolbabam, son 70 ijese šumbrava, jaki pangs, teji píre... íevť, jaki kiťtemaň-moramoaň kurov. Son erí íetaň-avaň marto.*

**Exercise 12.** Introduce your family, based on the following questions:

*Ton kijat? Kostoňat? Koda(mo) lémeť? Šňaro íjeť? Kít tetat-avat?  
 Ulít-arať patat-sazorot /lélat-jalaksot? Koda(mo)t lémeť? Meže siň tejiť ?  
 Ulít -arať pokšťat-babat? Šňaro íjest? Koso siň erít ? Siň šumbrat?  
 Ulít-arať jalgat? Kít siň? Kostoňť ? Meže tejiť ? Kít tetast-avast?*

**Exercise 13.** Translate into English:

*Valmeťevkst:*

*Šňardo pekeť vači, šeste převejť šači.  
 Meže putat převezet, še sati pingezet.  
 Čevít kedenze, pšítit kenťenze.*

**VOCABULARY** *Valks*

<i>alo pe</i>	lower end of the village	<i>ponasuťe</i>	woollen yarn, worsted
<i>átavt</i>	father-in-law	<i>přa</i>	head
<i>avavt</i>	mother-in-law	<i>přev(t)</i>	brain, sense
<i>čeř</i>	hair	<i>pulaj</i>	back-apron
<i>ejkakš</i>	child	<i>pursoz</i>	piglet
<i>eťge</i>	pearl	<i>putoms</i>	to put
<i>karťsems</i>	to wear smth on the feet	<i>pškadems</i>	to address
<i>karť-prakstat</i>	footwear (ethnographic)	<i>řeve</i>	sheep
<i>kedťks</i>	bracelet	<i>ruća</i>	robe, gown



<i>kemí</i>	boots	<i>rungo</i>	chest, body
<i>keřams</i>	to cut, chop	<i>ruzava</i>	Russian (woman)
<i>kirga</i>	neck	<i>saraz</i>	chicken
<i>kirgapar'</i>	throat	<i>satoms</i>	to suffice
<i>kocť</i>	fabric	<i>satořka</i>	sufficiently
<i>kodams</i>	to knit	<i>sazor</i>	(younger) sister
<i>kořas</i>	according to	<i>skal</i>	cow
<i>kudorařke</i>	family	<i>siveľ</i>	meat
<i>lamoňest</i>	amongst themselves	<i>řkamo(-m)</i>	alone ( <i>possessive</i> )
<i>lang/s, -so</i>	on to, on	<i>řulgamo</i>	brooch
<i>ľiřems</i>	to go out	<i>sur</i>	finger
<i>ľiřems miřdeňeň</i>	to get married (to go to a man)	<i>surks</i>	ring
<i>meřems</i>	to say	<i>řačoms</i>	to be born
<i>meřte</i>	chest	<i>tago-řardo</i>	sometime
<i>miřde</i>	man, husband	<i>tařto</i>	old
<i>ňi</i>	woman, wife	<i>teke</i>	same
<i>orřamo(pel)</i>	clothing	<i>ruzijams</i>	to russify
<i>paća</i>	towel	<i>uli-paro</i>	fortune
<i>panar</i>	shirt, tunic	<i>umok</i>	long ago
<i>pango</i>	bonnet	<i>uřař</i>	sister-in-law
<i>pango</i>	mushroom	<i>uřviňe</i>	youngest daughter-in-law
<i>parija</i>	husband's sister	<i>uřvaksto/ms</i>	to get married (take a wife)
<i>pata</i>	older sister, aunt	<i>vana</i>	look!
<i>peke</i>	stomach	<i>vačoms</i>	to become hungry
<i>pej</i>	tooth	<i>vačopeke</i>	with an empty stomach
<i>peňer'va</i>	youngest daughter-in-law	<i>vařňa</i>	at first
<i>piľe</i>	ear	<i>vasolbaba</i>	maternal grandmother
<i>piľekst</i>	earrings	<i>veře pe</i>	upper end of the village
<i>piľge</i>	leg, foot	<i>veřeňce</i>	younger
<i>pokř či</i>	holiday, celebration	<i>vikřňems</i>	to crochet, embroider
<i>pokřiat-babat</i>	grandfather and -mother	<i>žepe</i>	pocket



Source: <http://purgine.livejournal.com/tag/%D0%9A%D0%BE%D1%81%D1%82%D1%8E%D0%BC>

## Unit 7 *Śisemeće pelks*

### GRAMMAR

#### Negative Forms (Present /Future and Past Simple)

Present /future: negation word *a* + conjugated verb form

Ex. *a mołan*, -*t*, -*i*, -*iano*, -*iado*, -*it* 'I, you (sg.), he /she /it, we, you (pl.), they don't / doesn't go'.

Past simple: conjugated form of negation verb *eź-* + verb stem

Ex. *eźiń*, -*t*, -*ź*, -*ńek*, -*de*, -*źt mołe* 'I, you (sg.), he/she/it, we, you (pl.), they didn't go'.

Examples: *tujems* 'to leave, go away', *sams* 'to come'.

Present /future	Past simple	Present/future	Past simple
<i>tujan</i> <i>san</i>	<i>tujin</i> <i>sin</i>	<i>a tujan</i> <i>a san</i>	<i>eźin tuje</i> <i>eźin sa</i>
<i>tujat</i> <i>sat</i>	<i>tujit</i> <i>sit</i>	<i>a tujat</i> <i>a sat</i>	<i>eźit tuje</i> <i>eźit sa</i>
<i>tuji</i> <i>si</i>	<i>tuś</i> <i>saś</i>	<i>a tuji</i> <i>a si</i>	<i>eź tuje</i> <i>eź sa</i>
<i>tutano</i> <i>satano</i>	<i>tujinek</i> <i>sinek</i>	<i>a tutano</i> <i>a satano</i>	<i>eźinek tuje</i> <i>eźinek sa</i>
<i>tutado</i> <i>satado</i>	<i>tujide</i> <i>side</i>	<i>a tutado</i> <i>a satado</i>	<i>eźide tuje</i> <i>eźide sa</i>
<i>tujit</i> <i>sit</i>	<i>tuśt</i> <i>saśt</i>	<i>a tujit</i> <i>a sit</i>	<i>eźt tuje</i> <i>eźt sa</i>

Negation is also expressed by the emphatic particle *-gak /-kak /-jak* affixed to pronouns and postpositions:

*Kiń nejit?* – *Kińgak eźin neje*. Who did you see? – I didn't see anyone.

*Kov jakit?* – *Kovgak eźin jaka*. Where did you go? – I didn't go anywhere.

*Meże meřit?* – *Meżejak eźin meře*. What did you say? – I did not say anything.

*Kiń marto kortit?* – *Kiń martojak eźin korta*. Who did you speak with? – I didn't speak with anyone.

The emphatic particle *-gak /-kak /-jak* may be added to either the postposition or the noun /pronoun preceding it, depending on which element the speaker wishes to stress:

*Kiń marto kortit?* – a) *Kińgak marto eźin korta*. b) *Kiń martojak eźin korta*.

#### Negation of the Verb *uľems*

The present tense forms of *uľems* express a state in the future: *Mon a uľan toso*. I will not be there. To express a state in the present, the negation *araś*, -*t* is used: *Sin araś toso*. They are not there. In clauses expressing possession ('to have'), the negation *araś*, -*t* is used with a noun phrase in the genitive form: *Moń araś škam*. I have no time. *Sonze araś škazo*. S/he has no time.

Just like the affirmative past tense forms (*mon uľniń, ton uľnit, son uľneś, miń uľnińek, tiń uľniđe, sin uľneśt*), the stand-alone negative forms of *uľems* come from the stem *uľne-* 'to be (frequentative, repeated)':

*Mon ežiň ulńe toso.* 'I wasn't there / I haven't been there.'  
*Ton ežiť ulńe toso.*  
*Son ež ulńe toso.*  
*Miň ežińek ulńe toso.*  
*Tiň ežiđe ulńe toso.*  
*Siň ežť ulńe toso.*

Predicative expressions consisting of a nominal and a past tense ending of the verb *ulems* are negated with the word *a*: *Mon a tosolíň* '(At the moment) I was not there (but rather somewhere else).' Compare also: *Mon ulńiň avol' toso*. 'I was (staying) not there (but rather somewhere else).' In the meaning of 'to be absent, lacking', the negative forms of the verb *aras'*, *-t* are used:

*Mon araselíň toso.* 'I wasn't there (I was absent at the moment)'.  
*Ton araselít toso.*  
*Son arasel' toso.*  
*Miň araselíńek toso.*  
*Tiň araselide toso.*  
*Siň araselť toso.*

**Exercise 1.** Fill in the blanks with negative past simple forms:

*Son ... lovo jarmakt. Miň ... mora klubso. Siň ... jaka velev? Ton ... jarsa čokšńe? Mon ... rama kańvetkat (sweets). Tiň ... lovno eržaň jovkst? Mon ... jaka bibliotekav íeči. Miň ... soda kosot jalganok. Siň ... tonavńe te školasońt. Son ... sa čokšńe kafeterijav.*

**Exercise 2.** Fill in the blanks with the proper negation (*a*, *avol'*, *ežińek*, *aras'*, *ež*):

*Son umok ... jaka Saranov.*  
*Estonťne Saranso ... pek lamot.*  
*Ton eržať? – ... , estonan.*  
*Mon mežejak ... mařan eřamodońť Saranso.*  
*Ton umok eřat Saranso? – ... umok.*  
*Tiň jakide Saranov? – ... .*

**Exercise 3.** Make sentences by joining the fragments on the left with the appropriate continuations on the right:

1. Kudonok	a. ulńešť lamo jalgam.
2. Ton šeste	b. ulńeš vasolo.
3. Kizna	c. ulńešť tonavťicat.
4. Ťetam-avam	d. ulńiň ekskuršijaso.
5. Mińek školaś	e. ulńešť ekskuršijaso.
6. Školaso moń	f. ulńeš pokš.
7. Studťntne	g. ulńiť viška ejkakš.

**Exercise 4.** Translate the following sentences into Erzya, using indefinite pronouns (*šardojak*, *kijak*, *kovgak*, *mežejak*, *kodajak*, *kostojak*, *kodamojak*).

I've never spoken with an Erzyan in his /her own language. No one lives here. We're not going anywhere today. They didn't buy anything abroad. I can't find a better place anywhere. He didn't go to any (any kind of) village.

### Imperative Mood (Indefinite Conjugation)

In the singular, the imperative is marked by the ending *-k* or *-t/-í*. The ending *-k* is generally used with stems ending in *a*, as well as with a few verbs with stems ending in *o* or *e*. The variants *-t* and *-í* are added to stems ending in *o* and *e* respectively (following the principles of vowel harmony). In simple stems, the vowels *o* and *e* are lost before the imperative ending. In the plural, the imperative ending is *-do/-đe*. The negative imperative is formed from the stem *íla* (plural *ílado*).

Singular: <i>-k</i> Plural: <i>-do /-đe</i>	Singular: <i>-t/-í</i> Plural: <i>-do /-đe</i>	Singular / plural (negative): <i>íla / íla-do + stem</i>
<i>morams: mora-k /-do</i> <i>jarsams: jarsa-k /-do</i> <i>sovams: sova-k /-do</i> <i>lovnoms: lovno-k /-do</i> <i>udoms: udo-k /-do</i> <i>ojmšems: ojmše-k /-đe</i> <i>kortniems: kortnie-k /-đe</i>	<i>vanoms: van-t /-o-do</i> <i>lovoms: lov-t /-o-do</i> <i>putoms: put-t /-o-do</i> <i>mošems: moš-í /-e-đe</i> <i>šimems: šim-í /-e-đe</i> <i>tejemms: tej-í /-e-đe</i> <i>sajems: saj-í /-e-đe</i>	<i>íla / íla-do mora</i> <i>íla / íla-do vano</i> <i>íla / íla-do saje</i>

Examples:

<i>Vana íese umarí. Jarsak!</i>	Look, there are apples here. Eat!
<i>Sak tej! Kortatano.</i>	Come here! Let's talk.
<i>Vana sulíkasoní limonad. Šimí!</i>	Look, there's lemonade in the bottle. Drink!
<i>Mařat moro? Kunsolok!</i>	Do you hear the song? Listen!
<i>Nejřado meřejak? Vanodo!</i>	Do you see anything? Look!
<i>Ažo tov! Toso lembe.</i>	Go there! It's warm there.
<i>Ažodo teste! Ílado tejňe íšća.</i>	Go away! Don't do that.
<i>Sovak! Ozak! Vasoldo sat?</i>	Come in! Have a seat! Are you coming from far away?
<i>Toso kijak araš. Íla / Ílado peše!</i>	There's no one there. Don't be afraid!
<i>Aštek-aštek! Čokšňeš kuvaka.</i>	Don't go anywhere (relax)! The evening is long.

The lexicalized forms *ažo*, *ažodo* 'go!' and *užo*, *užodo* 'wait!' behave more like interjections than standard imperative forms:

*Užo, meří ton kortat?* Wait, what are you talking about?  
*Ažo sodik, meřede son korti.* Who knows (*liter.* go, know) what he /she is talking about.

**Exercise 5.** Choose a suitable expression for each request /invitation:

Request /invitation:	Expressions:
to take a seat	<i>Sovak!</i>
to come over	<i>Ozak!</i>
to listen	<i>Sak tej!</i>
to come in	<i>Aštede-aštede!</i>
to stay in place	<i>Šimí!</i>
to drink	<i>Jarsado!</i>
to eat	<i>Ažodo!</i>
not to be scared	<i>Užo-užo!</i>
to go away	<i>Ílado peše!</i>
to wait	<i>Kunsolok!</i>

## CONVERSATION AND READING Kortamo – lovnoma

### Life stories *Eramoñede*

<i>paro melse</i>	gladly, with pleasure
<i>erams vepelē</i>	to live away from home
<i>erva koso</i>	all over the place, everywhere
<i>erams pensijañ jarmakso</i>	to live off a pension (be retired)
<i>tujems mels</i>	to please, appeal to
<i>si ijeste</i>	next year
<i>šeñ kuvalt</i>	because of/through that
<i>ažo, -do tov</i>	go there
<i>sak(a) tej</i>	come here

### TEXT 1

#### *Moñ eramom*

*Mon šačiñ-kasiñ Kuzim velese. 1950-če ijetñeste veles pokšol, kudoñe ulñeš kavto šadodo lamot. Veleñ eričatñe kortaš anšak erzaks. Kijak ež korta ružoñ kelše. Mejle karmaš sodamo ružoñ keleñkak. Eriñ velese šisem ijet. Veleñ školasoñ ulñeš anšak ñile klasst. Pokš škola malas arašel. Patam-lelam tuš Saranov tonavñeme. Mejle teñam-avamgak sazorum marto tuš tov. Mon eriñ babañ marto. Kavsoče ijestem tujiñ Saranov. Toso karmin tonavñeme ružoñ školaso. Vašeñče ijeste ružoñ kelše tonavñemaš ulñeš staka. Erva kizna jakiñ velev, eriñ toso pek paro melse. Školado mejle tonavñiñ universitetse vašña anglañ keleñ, mejle francužoñ keleñ. Ñej kolmoñgemeñ ijede lamo eran Tartuso. Kortan estonoks, tonavñan lija finneñ-ugrañ kelkak. Šnardo-šnardo jakan ombo mastorov. Jakan íevs, avol ojmseme. Ulñiñ Anglijaso, Italijaso, Francijaso, Vengrijaso, Germañijaso.*

**Exercise 6.** Listen and repeat. Audio: ([www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv/naita.php?t=audio\\_trakk&id=4744](http://www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv/naita.php?t=audio_trakk&id=4744))

**Exercise 7.** Answer the questions:

- Šnaro eričat ulñeš Kuzimse?
- Meks šormadičaš tuš eram Saranov?
- Ejkakšpingste son kortaš ružoñ kelše?
- Ružoñ kelše tonavñemaš ulñeš staka?
- Meže son tonavñeš universitetse?
- Meks son saš eram Tartuv?
- Snaroče ije eri Tartuso?
- Meks son jaki ombo mastorov?

**Exercise 8.** Are the following suppositions accurate? Use the model in the answers *a* and *b*:

- a) *Toñ lemeš Toomas /Tiia?* – *Avol. Moñ lememe ...*  
b) *Ton studentat.* – *Vide. Studentan.* / *Avol, mon tonavtičan.*

- *Ton šačiñ velese.*
- *Ton kasiñ pokš kudoraške jutkso.*
- *Toñ uliñ patat-sazorot. Toñ uliñ lelat.*
- *Toñ paro jalgat eriñ vasolo, ombo mastorso.*
- *Ton tonavñiñ Tallinnse, ñej kosojak a tonavñat.*
- *Kurok ton molat tonavñeme ombo mastorov.*
- *Toñ uliñ meleš kortams erzaks.*

**Exercise 9.** Choose an appropriate answer to each question:

Questions:	Answer choices:
<i>Kit' tetat-avat?</i>	<i>Velese.</i>
<i>Koso siň erit'?</i>	<i>A pek.</i>
<i>Sňaro ijenze tetat', avat', sazorot, jalaksot, lelat'?</i>	<i>Jakiň.</i>
<i>Ton urvakstit' /lišit' mirdeňeň?</i>	<i>Mełat.</i>
<i>Sňardo karmit' tonavtneme univrsitetse?</i>	<i>Eziň.</i>
<i>Meks karmit' tonavtneme erzan' keleňt'?</i>	<i>Tonavtičat.</i>
<i>Tonavtnemas' staka?</i>	<i>54 /53 /20 /30 /18.</i>
<i>Ombo mastorov jakit'?</i>	<i>Eravi.</i>

**Exercise 10.** Fill in the blanks:

*Moň leme... Nasta. Mirdem leme... Stopa, seks moňeň velese merit' Stopa... . Sede odne merit' Nasta ... . Mon 70 ijesan, mirdem 75 ije..., eratan pensijaň jarmakso. Veleň... lemeze vireň Tavla, son ašti vireň-pandoň tarka... . Ejkakšonok vele, veše mazijit', prev..., parot. Nej siň erit' vepelē. Čoratiňe Moskov... – vejkeš tonavtni, kavto... tonavtnemado mejle važodit'. Siň urvakstož, ulit' ejkakšostkak. Vejke tejteře... lišit' mirdeňeň ombo mastor... . Son vasolo. Ombočeš eri šabra vele... . Kudozo pokš, ejkakšo... kavto. Si ijeste leleň škasto eratan pokš tejteřeň ..., kizna si veženče čoras Moskov..., šeste eratan es kudoso.*

**Exercise 11.** Write some facts in Erzya about your life history (approx. 100 words).

## TEXT 2

### Skulptor Eržado

*Eržan raškeňeň lišš skulptor, konaňde vašna karmašit' sodamo Italijaso, Francijaso, lija mastorga Europaso, sede meile Ruzoň, Eržan mastorsojak. Sonze lemeze Stepan D. Nejjodov (tetanzo lemeze ulheš Dmitrij, eržaks meřems Mitřej). Saranso uli Stepan Eržan lemse galeřeja. Ekskuršijaň vetiča korti tuřist marto, kona vašeňčede maři skulptor Eržado.*

- *Stepan Nejjodov-Erža šačš 1876-če ijeste eržan velese, Bajevoso. Ejkakšpingstenze son tonavtniš artomaň tevenit', artš pazavat. Son ulheš komš kotovo ijese od čora, sňardo tuš tonavtneme Moskovov. Tonavtnemste karmašit' tejeme skulpturat (kevrungot).*
- *Sňardo sonze lemeks karmašit' uleme Erža?*
- *Moskovso eramsto sonze ulheš jalgaks vejke lomaň Italijasto. 1906 ijeste Stepan tuš Italijav. Vašna son eraš jalganzo kudoso. Artomaň, skulpturaň paro sodiča (Ugo Nebbia) marto Stepan jakaš lamo mužejga, karmašit' nejeme sede parosto skulpturaň mazičičit'. Ombo mastorso son eraš kavkso ijeť, skulpturanzo ulhešit' kemeňška nevtemaso. Skulpturanzo langs son karmašit' keřamo S. Erža lemeňit'.*
- *Išta tombale, Evropaso, karmašit' sodamo eržan skulptordo, eržatiňede?*
- *Lamoňe aršešit', son ruz. Eržan raškeđe ombo mastorso mežejak ežt' soda. Skulptoroňit' lemenze kuvalt karmašit' lomaňiňe tija-tuva sodamo eržan raškeđeňit'kak.*
- *Sňardo Stepan Erža saš es mastorov?*
- *Eravi meřems, es mastorso son ež erajak. Anšak jakaš sňardo-sňardo kudoraškenze vanomo. Eraš Moskovso, Uralso, mejle 1926 ijeste tuš Pařižev, tosto ijede mejle Argentinav. Moskovov son tago saš 1950 ijeste, ijenze šeste ulhešit' 74. Son šumbra lomaňel'. Moskovso 1954 ijeste sonze ulhešit' pokš nevtemazo. Pek lamot sašit' skulpturanzo vanomo. Sede mejle sonze ateljese sval ulhešit' lomaňit'. Kuloš Stepan Erža 1959 ijeste Moskovso, kalmozo Saranso.*
- *Skulpturanzo mazijdejak mazijit'. Moň melš pek tujit' marmorsto di čvutosto keřaž šačotiče, kevrungotiče.*
- *Marmorsto son karmašit' keřamo Italijaso, Mikelanželoň skulpturaňeň langs vanož. Argentinaso son keřaš lamo šačot čvutosto. Stepan Erža eraš pek staka eramoso lija mastorga –*

*jarmaktomo, kudovtomo, vačočise. Saranoń galérejasoní lamo skulpturanzo arasí, siń lomań keđga erva kuvat.*

- *Kijak šormadś Štepan Erzado?*
- *Šormadś. Uliť paro albomt arhiveń maťerial marto, lija literaturajak. Vana te info-lopastoní lovnodo meześ uli. Vanodo, íese uli bibliografija. Sovado minek arhiveń zalońteń, moľede Bajevo-veľev: kudosońí, koso šačś-kaśś Štepan Erza, nej muzej.*

**Exercise 12.** Correct the following statements about the text.

1. *Skulptor Erzań teianzo ľemeze ulńes Štepan.*
2. *Skulptoroś tonavńes skulptura Italijaso.*
3. *Erza eras Italijaso kolmo ijeť.*
4. *Moskovso uli Erzań ľemse galéreja.*
5. *Argentinaso Erza keřas lamo šačot marmorsto.*
6. *Erzań eramodonzo kijak mezejak eź šormado.*

**Exercise 13.** Visit the following link: view the materials provided online by the Stepan Erzya Museum (contents: the sculptor's biography, a photo gallery displaying his works, bibliographical references, a visit to the museum).

[www.goloserzi.ru/erzia/](http://www.goloserzi.ru/erzia/)

**Exercise 14.** Write some facts in Erzya about the life history of a writer (a painter, or a linguist).

### VOCABULARY *Valks*

<i>artoms, -ma</i>	to paint, -ing	<i>ńevńema</i>	exhibition, show
<i>ańśak</i>	only	<i>paz</i>	god
<i>arśems</i>	to think, believe	<i>pazava</i>	icon
<i>ažo, -do</i>	go! (sg./pl.)	<i>peľems</i>	to fear
<i>ejkakšpinge</i>	childhood	<i>penšija</i>	pension
<i>eravi</i>	must, is necessary	<i>putoms</i>	to put
<i>erica</i>	inhabitant	<i>ramams</i>	to buy
<i>erva</i>	each, every	<i>si ijeste</i>	next year
<i>ila, -do</i>	don't! (sg./pl.)	<i>sovams</i>	to enter
<i>info-łopa</i>	fact sheet	<i>sulika</i>	glass, bottle
<i>jutkso</i>	amongst, amidst	<i>sval</i>	always
<i>kalmo</i>	grave	<i>śeks</i>	because
<i>kańńvetkat</i>	sweets	<i>šačoms</i>	to be born
<i>kasoms</i>	to grow	<i>šačo</i>	form, figure
<i>kaźńe</i>	gift, present	<i>tago</i>	again
<i>keřams</i>	to cut	<i>ńija-tuva</i>	here and there
<i>kevrungo</i>	sculpture, monument	<i>tombale</i>	abroad
<i>kšńi</i>	iron	<i>tonadoms</i>	to learn, get used to
<i>kuloms</i>	to die	<i>ťrams ejkakš</i>	to raise a child
<i>kuvalt</i>	because of, along	<i>tujems</i>	to leave
<i>langs</i>	on top of	<i>umok</i>	long ago, wayback
<i>liśems</i>	to exit, go out	<i>vana</i>	look!
<i>marmor</i>	marble	<i>vepeľe</i>	at a distance
<i>mastorlango</i>	world	<i>vačoči</i>	hunger
<i>maziči</i>	beauty	<i>važodems</i>	to work
<i>meľs tujems</i>	to please, appeal to, like	<i>vešńems</i>	to look/search for
<i>mijems</i>	to sell	<i>veťica</i>	leader, guide
<i>meľat</i>	last year	<i>vide</i>	true, right
<i>ozams</i>	to sit	<i>čavo</i>	empty
<i>paro meľse</i>	gladly, with pleasure	<i>čuvto, -ń</i>	wood, -en

## Unit 8 *Kavksoće peľks*

### GRAMMAR

#### Definite Conjugation

The Erzya verb system includes a separate conjugation paradigm for verbs used with definite objects, e.g. *tejsa* 'I will do it', *morasińek morońt* 'we will sing the song'. The definite conjugation can only be used with transitive verbs because of its dependence on the object. Present-tense forms of the definite conjugation generally refer to future (or completed) activities.

Indefinite conjugation:	Definite conjugation:
<i>Mon šormadan šorma.</i> I'm writing a letter.	<i>Mon šormadsa šormańt.</i> I will write the letter.

However, the present tense definite conjugation forms of verbs expressing feelings, sensations or states (e.g. *večkems* 'to love', *mařams* 'to hear, feel', *sodams* 'to know') typically refer to the present, not the future.

Indefinite declension: present	Definite declension: present
<i>Mon sodan jovks.</i> I know a fairy tale.	<i>Mon sodasa jovksońt.</i> I know the fairy tale.
<i>Mon mařan moro.</i> I hear a song.	<i>Mon mařasa morońt.</i> I hear the song.

Some verbs (e.g. *ńejems* 'to see') may be used in the definite conjugation to refer to either present or future time, depending on the context.

Indefinite declension:	Definite declension:
<i>Mon ńejan tejer</i> (present). I see a girl.	<i>Mon ńesa tejerėńt</i> (present/future). I (will) see the girl.

The definite conjugation forms of the verb *ńejems* may in such cases (depending on the object) refer only to present time:

<i>Mon ńejan narmoń.</i> I see a bird.	<i>Mon ńesa narmońėńt.</i> I see the bird.
---	---

#### Formation of the Definite Conjugation

In the definite conjugation, the forms added to the verb stem express the person and number of both subject and object (although there is considerable overlap between the plural forms). Some forms (e.g. I /us) are absent from the paradigm, as can be seen in the tables below. The subject appears in the indefinite, definite, or possessive declension in the nominative case, while the object appears in the definite or possessive declension in the genitive (indicating completed action).

*Ava / Avaś / Avazo moriže morońt / moronzo.*  
'A woman / The woman / His mother sang the / her song'.

An object in the definite or possessive declension together with a verb in the indefinite conjugation indicates unfinished action:

*Ava / avaś / avazo moraś moro / morońt / moronzo.*  
'A woman / The woman / His mother was singing a / the / her song'.



Definite conjugation endings

a) Present / future (completed action),

b) Past simple (completed action):

	<i>moń</i>	<i>toń</i>	<i>sonze</i>	<i>mińek</i>	<i>tink</i>	<i>sinst</i>
a)						
<i>mon</i>		<i>-tan/-ían</i>	<i>-sa</i>		<i>-tadiź/-íadiź</i>	<i>-siń</i>
<i>ton</i>	<i>-samak</i>		<i>-sak</i>	<i>-samiź</i>		<i>-siť</i>
<i>son</i>	<i>-samam</i>	<i>-tanzat/-íanzat</i>	<i>-si</i>	<i>-samiź</i>	<i>-tadiź/-íadiź</i>	<i>-sinze</i>
<i>miń</i>		<i>-tadiź/-íadiź</i>	<i>-sińek</i>		<i>-tadiź/-íadiź</i>	<i>-sińek</i>
<i>tiń</i>	<i>-samiź</i>		<i>-sink</i>	<i>-samiź</i>		<i>-sink</i>
<i>siń</i>	<i>-samiź</i>	<i>-tadiź/-íadiź</i>	<i>-siź</i>	<i>-samiź</i>	<i>-tadiź/-íadiź</i>	<i>-siź</i>
b)						
<i>mon</i>		<i>-tiń</i>	<i>-ja</i>		<i>-diź</i>	<i>-ń</i>
<i>ton</i>	<i>-mik</i>		<i>-k</i>	<i>-miź</i>		<i>-ť</i>
<i>son</i>	<i>-mim</i>	<i>-ńziť</i>	<i>-ze</i>	<i>-miź</i>	<i>-diź</i>	<i>-nze</i>
<i>miń</i>		<i>-diź</i>	<i>-ńek</i>		<i>-diź</i>	<i>-ńek</i>
<i>tiń</i>	<i>-miź</i>		<i>-nk</i>	<i>-miź</i>		<i>-nk</i>
<i>siń</i>	<i>-miź</i>	<i>-diź</i>	<i>-ź</i>	<i>-miź</i>	<i>-diź</i>	<i>-ź</i>

Note that the past tense forms of the definite conjugation all include the past tense marker *i*, which replaces the stem vowel *a*, *e*, or *o* and precedes the endings listed above.

Examples:

Indefinite conjugation:

Definite conjugation:

a) present

*Mon śormad-an śorma*

*Ton śormad-at śorma*

*Son śormad-i śorma*

*Miń śormad-tano śorma*

*Tiń śormad-tado śorma*

*Siń śormad-iť śorma*

b) past

*Mon śormad-i-ń śorma*

*Ton śormad-i-ť śorma*

*Son śormad-ś śorma*

*Miń śormad-i-ńek śorma*

*Tiń śormad-i-đe śorma*

*Siń śormad-śi śorma*

present/future (completed action)

*Mon śormad-sa śormańiť*

*Ton śormad-sak śormańiť*

*Son śormad-si śormańiť*

*Miń śormad-sińek śormańiť*

*Tiń śormad-sink śormańiť*

*Siń śormad-siź śormańiť*

past (completed action)

*Mon śormad-i-ja śormańiť*

*Ton śormad-i-k śormańiť*

*Son śormad-i-ze śormańiť*

*Miń śormad-i-ńek śormańiť*

*Tiń śormad-i-nk śormańiť*

*Siń śormad-i-ź śormańiť*

In both the indefinite and definite declension, negation is expressed with the word *a* (in the present / future) and the negative verb stem *eź-* (in the past). In the present, the word *a* is followed by the appropriate conjugated verb form, while in the past, the definite conjugation forms are added to the stem *eź-*, followed by the stem of the main verb.

Examples:

Present/future: *a śormadsa śormańiť* 'I won't write the letter', *a sodatan* 'I don't know you';

Past: *eźija śormado śormańiť* 'I didn't write the letter', *eźitiń soda* 'I didn't recognize you'.

## Use of the Definite Conjugation

Indefinite conjugation	Definite conjugation
<b>Unfinished action:</b> <i>Mon lovnan jovks.</i> I am reading / will read a tale. <i>Mon lovniñ jovks.</i> I (have) read a tale.	<b>Completed action:</b> <i>Mon lovnosa jovksoñt.</i> I will read the tale. <i>Mon lovnija jovksoñt.</i> I (have) read the tale.
<b>State / sense verbs</b> <i>Mon večkan ejkakšt.</i> I love children. <i>Son maři vajgełt.</i> He /She hears /is hearing voices. <i>Tiñ sodatado jovkst?</i> Do you know tales?  <i>Mon nejjan narmonoñ.</i> I see a bird. <i>Mon nejjan íejteř.</i> I (will) see a girl.	<b>State / sense verbs</b> <i>Mon večksiñ ejkakštneñ.</i> I love the children. <i>Son mařasiñže vajgełtneñ.</i> He /She hears /is hearing the voices. <i>Tiñ sodasink jovkstneñ?</i> Do you know the tales?  <i>Mon nesá narmonoñt.</i> I see the bird. <i>Mon nesá íejteřeñt.</i> I (will) see the girl.

**Exercise 1.** Identify the transitive verbs in the following list:

*jakams, kortams, muškems, sevems, tonavíñems, sodams, večkems, aštéms, maksoms, sams, ramams, tujems, kandoms, mołems.*

**Exercise 2.** Conjugate the following verbs in the definite conjugation (present and past tense):  
*lovnoms (šormañt), sevems (kšiñt), jovtñems (jovksoñt).*

**Exercise 3.** Conjugate the verbs *sasams* ‘to catch, catch up to’ and *íerđems* ‘to invite’ in the definite conjugation, e.g.: *mon toñ sasatan, ton moñ íerđsamak.*

**Exercise 4.** Fill the blanks in column B with definite conjugation verb forms, matching the indefinite conjugation sentences given in column A.

<p>A. <i>Siñ morít morot.</i>  <i>Son lovnoš jovks.</i>  <i>Šormadan šorma.</i>  <i>Tejít teví?</i>  <i>Viksňat panar?</i>  <i>Pañtano kši.</i>  <i>Miñ mařiñek vajgeł.</i>  <i>Nejiñ eřke.</i></p>	<p>B. <i>Siñ morasiž morotíneñ.</i>  <i>Son ... jovkstneñ.</i>  <i>... šormant.</i>  <i>... íevtneñ?</i>  <i>... panaroñt?</i>  <i>... kšiñt.</i>  <i>Miñ ... vajgełeñt.</i>  <i>... eřkeñt.</i></p>
---	--

**Exercise 5.** Fill in the blanks in the text with the following verb forms: *šormadoms, kortatano, sodasa, večksiñ, mołems, sodasi, tonavtñesink, sodasak, kortams, čařkodeme.*

*Meks tonavtňat eržañ keleñt ?*

- *Eržañ keleñt ... ? – Alamodo ... .*
- *Jalgatkak ... ? – Son sodasi moñdem parosto.*
- *Koso tonavtñeťado eržañ keleñt? – Finneñ-ugrañ kafedraso.*
- *Meks ... ? – Uli meleñek ... eržañ kełse.*
- *Mon ... Toramañ morotíneñ. Šňardo-šňardo Toramaš si tej, miñ ... eržaks moričatíneñ marto. Šeks tonavtňan eržañ keleñt.*
- *Moñ uli melem ... eržañ velev. Toso kortit eržaks, mon karman ... mežde kortit.*
- *Moñeñ eřavi eržañ keleš uraloñ kelťneñ tonavtñemste.*
- *Mon aršan ... jutavkst eržañ kelste estonoñ kełs.*

## Derivational suffixes

The derivational suffix *-s-* is a frequentative suffix; it indicates that the action described takes place repeatedly. Frequentatives feature prominently in Erzya verbal derivational morphology. You have already come across one other frequentative suffix, *-n-/-ń-*, found in the verbs *vannoms* ‘to look’, *tonavtńems* ‘to learn’ (cf. *vanoms* ‘to look’, *tonavtoms* ‘to teach’) and in the past tense forms *ulńńń*, *ulńńít* etc. Another common frequentative marker is *-kšń-/-kšń-*: *vanokšńoms* ‘to look, research, study, investigate’, *ńejekšńems* (compare *vanoms* ‘to look’, *ńejems* ‘to see’). As can be seen from these examples, the addition of the frequentative suffix sometimes changes the meaning of the word dramatically, while in other cases (e.g. *ramams* and *ramšems* ‘to buy’) it merely conveys repeated action.

## CONVERSATION AND READING *Kortamo – lovnoma*

### *Erva čńń íevńńede* Everyday life

<i>lomań jutkso</i>	among people
<i>jutkoška, -sto</i>	free time, in one’s free time
<i>uštoms kaštom</i>	to heat the oven
<i>mežń-mežń, koj-mežń</i>	something
<i>veńams prá</i>	to behave, act
<i>erva mež/e, -ń</i>	all kinds of things
<i>pińńeze</i>	(its) price
<i>pekem, -ń/-ze/-ńek/-nk/-st vačš</i>	(my/your/etc) stomach has become empty
<i>tese vana</i>	look (here)

### TEXT 1

*Mitńejńńize šńń čńńńsema marto. Uštń kaštomonzo, pońavtń skalonzo, pańń kšń, píđń jam. Jarsńń-ńejńń mirńdenze marto, mirńdeš tuńń vedgevev. Vedgeveš tašto, Mitńejatań toso tevenze lamot. Mitńejńńize čńń íejńń kudońń íevńń – píđń, šńń-ńardi, muški. Jutkoškasto šńń mežńejak. Čokšńeń peńev son tuńń píńev, toso valnosńńze emežńńeń. Čokšńe andsńńze řevetńńeń, skalonń, soví kudos. Mirńdenze marto jarsńń-ńejńń, karnńń vanomo teńevízor. Šńardo-šńardo soví šabrast, Dřńgata. Čoratańńe šńńńń čajde, karnńń kortamo polńńńkado, veńeńń íevńńede, umok škadońń. Avaš šńń-kodń, kunsolń mežede čoratańńe kortńń. Íšta čokšńeń juti. Ejkakšost erńń vepeńe, šńardo-šńardo šńń veńev. Tunda šńń emežeńń putomo, šokšńa lezdńń emežńńeń purnamsto.*

**Exercise 6.** Listen and repeat. Audio: DS0169-23 ([www.murre.ut.ee/arhiv/naita.php?t=audio\\_trakk&id=4745](http://www.murre.ut.ee/arhiv/naita.php?t=audio_trakk&id=4745))

**Exercise 7.** Answer the questions:

- Kodamo íevńń íejńń Mitńejńńize valske marto, čńń, čokšńe?*
- Koso važodń Mitńejata?*
- Koda juti čokšńeń?*
- Kńje šń Mitńejatań marto kortamo čokšńe?*
- Mežde kortńń čoratańńe? Avaš kortńń čoratańńeń marto?*
- Kosot ejkakšost?*

### TEXT 2

Aštema kudo

*Kov od lomańńeńe jakašńń vejse umokonń škasto, šńardo arašeńń a klubń, a kafeterńńat, a kńnońeatrat? Kńzna šńń puromšńń kńšńeme-moramomo veńeńń kunskasoo, lńńa tarkava, molšńń vńev. Teńńa čokšńeńń škasto šńń*

*puromšć škamonzo eřića avaň kudos, konaňeň meřšć ašćema kudo. Od íejćeřće sajiž martost stamost-kodamost, vikšňemast. Ašćemaň kudoso siň ñevlíz mežeňć mašćiz íejeme, vaníz lįjaňeň íevest, tonavtňešć mežejak od. Ašćemaň kudos puromšć od ćoratkak. Od lomaňće veise kortašć, kišćšć-morašć, nalkšešć, mušć jalgat. Toso ulňešć pejdemat, šňardo-šňardo šelvedćkak. Ćoraňće-íejćeřće tonadšć lomaň jutkso ašćeme, karmašć sodamo koda vetams praňć.*

**Exercise 8.** Listen and repeat. Audio: DS0169-24 ([www.murre.ut.ee/arhiv/naita.php?t=audio\\_trakk&id=4746](http://www.murre.ut.ee/arhiv/naita.php?t=audio_trakk&id=4746))

**Exercise 9.** Complete the table *Ašćema kudo*:

<i>Kit ĵakašć ašćema kudov?</i>	<i>Mežeks ĵakašć od lomaňće ašćema kudov?</i>	<i>Koda ĵutašć ćokšňeňće ašćema kudoso?</i>

**Exercise 10.** Choose the right word to fill in the blank (word list: *kudopotmo, peke, pra, keskav, žepe, keđ*):

- Ćavo ..... *lamo íevć a íejat.*  
 Ćavo ..... *inžeks a moľat.*  
 Ćavo ..... *šćado a ašći.*  
 Ćavo ..... *marćo eřams a staka.*  
 Ćavo..... *siřeťňeňć meľs a tuji.*

**Exercise 11.** How do young people today spend their time? The following expressions may help you form your answer: *ulć meľest tejems lamo tevć, ĵakams ekšelamo /viřev, puromoms kišćeme-moramom, sams lezdamo, moľems /ĵakams ombo mastorov, íejems sport.* Say how you are going to spend your summer vacation.

**Exercise 12.** Visit the following link: view the tradition of Erzya folk singing (performed by the folk group Torama, who use traditional folk instruments).

[www.youtube.com/watch?v=mOwIUjdxMGQ&feature=related](http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=mOwIUjdxMGQ&feature=related)

### TEXT 3

*Meže ramić? Šňaro piťňeze?*

- *Avaj, mežć-mežć ramić? Meže keskavsot?*
- *Eřva mežć. Ĵarsamopel, oršamot-kařsemat, kocť.*
- *Mežeks koctonć ramik?*
- *Meľezem tuš. Stan mežejak.*
- *Vaj, kodamo mazij! Raužo marćo ĵakšćeře, seň; ašo, piže, ožo, tuža lopineć. Šňaro piťňeze?*
- *A pek piťňejgak.*
- *Paro. Peket vaćš?*
- *Alamodo vaćš. Šimćano ćajde, mejľe piđesiňek siveľeňć, ćokšňe ulć meže ĵarsams.*
- *Koso siveľešć?*
- *Sajik keskavstonć, son koňovonć potsom.*
- *Avaj, kšć ramić? Koso kšćšć?*
- *Vaj, stuvťija ramams...*

**Exercise 13.** Say what you buy from the store often /sometimes /rarely. Note the use of the verbs *ramams* and *ramšems*:

*Mon raman kšć.* I buy bread.

Mon **ramšan** (frequentative) *kši šejedste /šńardo-šńardo /čurosto*. I buy bread often /sometimes /rarely.

Say the price of the items you buy, e.g.: *kšíní pińeze 1 (vejke) euro*.

**Exercise 14.** Answer the questions:

1. *Meže kažat íetateń, avateń, sazorońeń, jalaksońeń, jalgateń, viška ejkakšneń, večkeviks morićańeń šačoma čistenze?*  
(answer choices: *kiniga, paća, moroń dísk, keskav, oršamopel, šokolad, čecat, nalkške*).
2. A) *Sńardo mołat lįja mastorov, sajat martot ... ?*  
(*oršamopel, karšemapel, jarsamopel, kaźńeń, końovt, kińigat, dokumentt, komputer*).  
B) *Mežeks sajsak / sajsit ... ?*  
(*oršamopelńeń, karšemapelńeń, jarsamopelńeń, kaźńeńeń, końovńeń, kińigatńeń, dokumenttneń, komputereń*).  
(Possible answers: *eřavi, -ń jarsams, šjormadoms jne*).

**Exercise 15.** Translate into Erzya:

Students have a lot of work – during the day they go to lectures and seminars, in the evening they study at home as well. Many study other languages. No one knows how much free time students have. Let's look at what they do in the summer, when they don't go to university. Many go abroad, that's why they learn languages. There are some students who work during the summer. In summer students have time to be with their families. They stay at home in their villages, go to the forest, go to the beach or the river bank. In the autumn and spring come the student days – young people meet at concerts, at sport clubs, play and dance together. Many sing in a choir year-round.

**VOCABULARY** *Valks*

<i>andoms</i>	to feed	<i>oršams</i>	to wear
<i>čeca</i>	flower	<i>oršamopel</i>	clothing
<i>čarńkodems</i>	to understand	<i>pańems</i>	to bake
<i>čavo</i>	empty	<i>pejdems</i>	to laugh
<i>čilišema</i>	sunrise	<i>peřka</i>	around
<i>emež</i>	vegetable	<i>pidems</i>	to cook
<i>jovks</i>	fairy-tale	<i>pińe</i>	price
<i>jutko</i>	gap	<i>pot(mo)sto</i>	from inside
<i>jutkoška</i>	free time	<i>potavtoms</i>	to milk
<i>karšems</i>	to put on the feet	<i>přaka</i>	patty
<i>karšemapel</i>	footwear	<i>puromoms</i>	to assemble, gather
<i>kandoms</i>	to carry	<i>putoms emežń</i>	to plant vegetables
<i>kaštom</i>	oven	<i>sajems</i>	to take
<i>kažems</i>	to give as a gift	<i>škamo(-m)</i>	(I) alone
<i>kaźńe</i>	gift, present	<i>sevems</i>	to eat up
<i>keskav</i>	bag	<i>sivel</i>	meat
<i>kińiga</i>	book	<i>sinš</i>	they (themselves)
<i>koct</i>	fabric	<i>sońš</i>	he/she (him-/herself)
<i>kodams</i>	to knit	<i>sovams</i>	to enter
<i>komputer</i>	computer	<i>šiams</i>	to get up
<i>końov</i>	paper, bill	<i>sta/ms, -mo</i>	to sew, -ing
<i>kši</i>	bread	<i>stuvtoms</i>	to forget

<i>kunsoloms</i>	to listen	<i>šlams</i>	to wash
<i>kunška</i>	middle, center	<i>šlams-nardams</i>	to clean
<i>lezdams</i>	to help	<i>tiňš</i>	you (yourselves)
<i>lop/a,-iňe</i>	leaf	<i>tonš</i>	you (yourself)
<i>lovso</i>	milk	<i>tašto</i>	old, worn-out
<i>maksoms</i>	to pay	<i>ierdems</i>	to invite
<i>mařams</i>	to hear	<i>udoms</i>	to sleep
<i>maštoms</i>	to know, be able to	<i>uštoms</i>	to heat
<i>miňš</i>	we (ourselves)	<i>vajgeł</i>	voice
<i>monš</i>	I (myself)	<i>val(n)oms</i>	to water
<i>morića</i>	singer	<i>valske marto</i>	in the morning
<i>muškems</i>	to do laundry	<i>važodems</i>	to work
<i>nalkšems</i>	to play	<i>večkems</i>	to love
<i>nalkške</i>	toy	<i>vedkev, -g-</i>	mill
<i>nardams</i>	to dry	<i>vejse</i>	together
<i>paňems</i>	to drive away	<i>veřams</i>	to pull
<i>paňems kši</i>	to bake bread	<i>veřams přa</i>	to behave
<i>ňevěms</i>	to show	<i>žepe</i>	pocket

## Unit 9 *Vejkseće pelks*

### GRAMMAR

#### Imperative Mood (Definite Conjugation)

Imperative verb forms appear in the definite conjugation with first-person and third-person objects, as well as with definite and possessive noun phrase objects.

Imperative mood definite conjugation forms (*veřams* ‘to take, lead, direct’, *učoms* ‘to wait’, *ierdems* ‘to invite’):

<b>ton</b>	<i>moň</i>	<i>veřa-mak, učo-mak, ierđe-mak</i>	<i>ila-mak veřa, učo, ierđe</i>
	<i>miňek</i>	<i>veřa-miž, učo-miž, ierđe-miž</i>	<i>ila-miž veřa, učo, ierđe</i>
	<i>sonze</i>	<i>veři-k, uči-k, ierđi-k</i>	<i>ili-k veřa, učo, ierđe</i>
	<i>sinst</i>	<i>veři-ť, uči-ť, ierđi-ť</i>	<i>ili-ť veřa, učo, ierđe</i>
<b>tiň</b>	<i>moň</i>	<i>veřa-miž, učo-miž, ierđe-miž</i>	<i>ila-miž veřa, učo, ierđe</i>
	<i>miňek</i>	<i>veřa-miž, učo-miž, ierđe-miž</i>	<i>ila-miž veřa, učo, ierđe</i>
	<i>sonze</i>	<i>veři-nk uči-nk ierđi-nk</i>	<i>ili-nk veřa, učo, ierđe</i>
	<i>sinst</i>	<i>veři-nk uči-nk ierđi-nk</i>	<i>ili-nk veřa, učo, ierđe</i>

As is the case in the indicative mood (see Unit 8), there is considerable overlap between the plural forms. With third-person objects (*sonze, sint*), the stem vowels *a*, *o*, and *e* are replaced by *i*. Negative imperatives are formed by affixing the appropriate definite conjugation ending to the negative imperative stem *il-*, followed by the stem of the main verb.

Examples:

*Paťaj, učomak, mongak moľan kinov.* Sister, wait for me, I'll go to the cinema, too.

*Ćoriňem, veřit alařatňeň řimeme.* My little boy, lead the horses to drink.

*Sajink koňovonk mekev.* Take your papers back.

*Ilamak ierđe – a moľan, řkam arař.* Don't ask me to come along – I won't go, I have no time.

*Ilĩnk stuvto sajems koňovĩňeň.* Don't forget to take the papers.

**Exercise 1.** Complete the text with the appropriate definite conjugation imperative forms:

(*Šormadoms*) *ne valtneñ.* (*Lovnom*s) *ie jovksoñi, son pek mazij.* (*Moram*s) *vana ie moroñi, moñ meñs son pek tuji.* (*Sajems*) *viřev, ľelaj, mon a karman kudov ieřdeme.* (*Vanom*s) *ejkakštneñ, udiť-a udiť!* (*Kunsolom*s – *moñ*), *jalgat, ilado moľe tov.* *Vanodo,* (*tapam*s: negative) *suľikañi.* (*Sajem*s: negative) *veše jarmakot bankasto.* (*Stuvtom*s: negative) *moñ valon.*

### Non-Finite Verb Forms

In addition to the infinitive (see Unit 5), Erzya non-finite verb forms include the present and past participle, as well as the gerund. The most common present and past participle endings are *-ća* and *-ź* respectively:

*morića /lovnića /tonavthića ejkakš* ‘a singing /reading /studying child’;  
*tejeź ie v* ‘done (finished) work’, *praź lopa* ‘a fallen leaf’.

The ending *-ća* is added to the third person singular present tense form:

*mora-ms, lovno-ms, tonavthie-ms: mori-ća, lovni-ća, tonavthi-ća.*

The present participle is negated by the negation word *a*, e.g. *a tonavthića ejkakš* ‘the child who isn’t studying’.

The ending *-ća* appears also in agent nouns: *morića* ‘singer’, *kunsolića* ‘listener’, *šormadića* ‘writer’).

The past participle in *-ź* may be used in both passive (*parosto šormadoź šorma* ‘a well-written letter’) and intransitive (*sižeź ćora* ‘a tired man’) contexts, as in English (but unlike in Finnish and Estonian). The ending *-ź* is added to the verb stem. The negative past participle is formed by the word *apak* followed by the verb stem:

*purna-ms, šormado-ms, teje-ms: purna-ź, šormado-ź, teje-ź;*  
negative: *apak purna, apak šormado, apak teje.*

(There are also less frequently used present and past participle endings, e.g. *-i(j)*, *-ks*; *-ñ*, *-vt*, *-vť*, as in *mori narmoni* ‘singing bird’, *večkeviks lomañ* ‘beloved person’, *išak sajeñ odiřva* ‘the bride taken yesterday (from a folk song)’, *avañ joravt kši* ‘bread baked by Mother’, *apak šežñevť* ‘untorn, unbroken’).

As in the example above (*avañ joravt kši*), the *-vt* past participle is used when preceded by a modifier in the genitive. Agent constructions consist of agent (in the genitive case) + participle + noun. (Those familiar with Finnic languages will be able to identify very similar structures in Finnish and Estonian).

Like other nominals, the present and past participles may receive a) definite and possessive declension case endings, b) *ulems* personal endings:

- a) *sića-ś, -thie; -m, -nok, -st* ‘arriving’; *sajeź-e-ś, -thie; sajeź-e-m, -ñek, -st* ‘taken’;
- b) *miñ sićatano, avoľ tujićatano* ‘we are comers, not goers’; *ton kučoźat ie v s, avoľ ištak* ‘you’ve been sent for a job, not for no reason’.

There are two gerunds, *-msto /-mste* and *-ź*, which serve as time and manner adverbials respectively. The *-msto/-mste* gerund indicates an action which takes place at the same time as another action; the *ź*-gerund describes the manner in which something is done:

*Viřev moľemste miñ moriñek.* ‘While going to the forest, we sang.’  
*Moliñek viřev moraź.* ‘We went to the forest singing.’

Both gerund endings are added directly to the verb stem:

*morams, lovnoms, moľems: mora-msto, lovno-msto, moľe-mste; mora-ź, lovno-ź, moľe-ź.*

The *-msto/-mste* gerund may be followed by possessive declension endings:

*mora-msto-nzo* ‘during his /her singing, while he /she is /was singing’,  
*lovno-msto-nok* ‘during our reading, while we are /were reading’,  
*moľe-mste-nk* (during your (pl). walking, while you are /were going);

**Exercise 2.** Translate the following phrases including *-ća* and *-ź* participles and *-msto /-mste* gerunds:

- tonavńića ejkakšozo, ućića lomańeś, lovsodo śimića vaz, sića ćoraś, mańića śeđej, ćarńodića ava, mińdeńeń liśića tejtērest, kudos sovića inźeś, mazijste kortićaś;*
- śormadoź ľem, maksoź jarmakost, veľeste uskoź umańeńek, seveź pńakatńe, parosto pideź jamoś, seńse-jakśteřese vikśńeź koctozo, muśkeź orśamo-pelenk;*
- teľevizoroń vanomsto, teveńi tejemste, jalgam marto kortamsto, veľev tujemste, kudov samsto, muźejga jakamsto, ejkakśtneń ućomsto, śkolav paćkodemste.*

**Exercise 3.** Choose the appropriate gerunds (*-ź* or *-msto/-mste*) to complete the sentences:

*Univerśiteteľ moľe-... vastija jalgam. Sastińe moľe-... paćkodiń Univerśitets.*  
*Ejkakšoś sovaś avaraďe-... . Nejjija ejkakšońi avaraďe-... .*  
*Ćoraś tuś kudov ćije-... . Son praś ćije-... .*

**Exercise 4.** Translate these Erzya proverbs (*valmeřevkst*):

*Eřamoś sokorońtkak nejjićaks tejsi.*  
*Īla keńardo, śńardo mujat, ĩla řizne, śńardo jomavtat.*

## CONVERSATION AND READING *Kortamo – lovnoma*

### Visiting the Erzyans *Erźatńeń peľe*

<i>meľ(eń) moľema</i>	longing; boredom
<i>meľem moľś</i>	I got bored; I miss /long for
<i>uľi meľ, -em</i>	I want
<i>koda tońeť mařavś ... ?</i>	How did ... seem to you?
<i>ikeľeń Ńka</i>	the old days
<i>jakavtoms</i>	to make (someone) go
<i>vana vansińek</i>	look (now), let's look at them
<i>-ńe, -ka, e.g. aśińe, mazijńe, tejtēřka</i>	(diminutive suffixes)
<i>-j, e.g.: numolkaj, avaj, teťaj, paťaj, ľeľaj</i>	(vocative marker, used when addressing someone)

### TEXT 1

*Pekka tonavńeś erźań keľeńi kavto ijeń peři. Uľńeś meľeze nejjems koda eřiť erźatńe eś mastorsost. Kizna son uľńeś Saran ośso, koso jakaś Univerśiteteń erźań keľeń kafedrav. Koľľegańe sajiź Pekkań erźań veľev. Pekka jovńi Tiinańeń seńde, meze nejs, kuva jakaś.*



- Tiina *Mon mariin ton jakii Saranov. Mejse ardi?*  
 Pekka *Tallinnse oziin pojezds, konasoni ardiin Moskovov. Tosto tujiin lija pojezdse Saranov. Ardomas ulnes ve, jutas pek parosto. Udiin chevie tarkaso, ojmshin-tejiin, valske marto sisemste pojezdes pacokos Mordovijav. Ardostto nejiin valmavanu tiia-tuva velineit. Saranso seske mujija Universtiteten, molin erzan keleen kafedrav. Kortiin kollegatnen marto, mejle sin sajimiiz jarsamo, sovinek kafeterijas.*
- Tiina *Koda toneit maravs Saran-osos? Tus melezet?*  
 Pekka *Oson kunshkas mazijdejak mazij, pek vanks, erva kuva cecat.*  
 Tiina *Lamo erzat vastit?*  
 Pekka *Saranga jakamsto mon erzan-mokson kel eziin mara, seks tujiin vejke kollegam marto erzan velev, Viiren Tavlav, kona a pek vasolo Saransto. Tarkas melezem pek tus – viri, pandineit. Tašto kudiinetnen jutkova astit od kudot. Velesenit uli viska muzejen kondamo etno-kudo. Toso nejiin koj-mezi vele lomanitnen ikelen skan eramostost, uli-parostost. Velesenit uli skola, koso tonavitit chvistosto keramon tevenit. Kericatne tejit chvton cacot, nalksket.*
- Tiina *Snaro cis jakii velev?*  
 Pekka *Kolmo cis. Jakavtimiiz kudosto kudos, erva koso jala jarsiinek-simiinek, kortiinek, lomanitne morasi moenen erzan morot. Vastin sire lomanit, konatne jovtnešt umok skan eramodost.*
- Tiina *Mezde jarside?*  
 Pekka *Erva mezde – restaz sivelde, kujardo, pangodo. Melezem pek tus panzakajitne chapamo lovso marto.*
- Tiina *Mejle side Saranov?*  
 Pekka *Saranov tujemado ikel sovinek kalmolangs, virs, astiinek lej chrese, mejle ardiinek a vasolo velitneva. Saranso astez jakii Stepan Erzan muzejev, sovin istorijan-etnografijan muzejs, ve choksheste uliin erzan-mokson teatrasi. Skaš jutas pek kuroksto.*
- Tiina *Melet ez mole?*  
 Pekka *Ez, ulnes melem sedejak lamo nejems. Si ijeste tago molan erzan jonksov, uli melem pacokodems Rav chrese ericatnen pelev.*
- Tiina *Tejit fototkak?*  
 Pekka *Snarija, vana vansiinek.*

**Exercise 5.** Are the following statements true (*vide*) or false (*a vide*)?

- *Moskovsto Saranov ardi Pekka cit.*
- *Pekka pacokos Saranov chokshne.*
- *Pekka jakas vanomo Saranon mazij tarkatnen avol skamonzo.*
- *Saranso Pekka kortas lamo loman marto erzaks.*
- *Viiren Tavlas asti viiren-pandon tarkaso.*
- *Pekkan jakavtiz kudosto kudos, son kunsolos morot, jovtneemat.*
- *Pekka velese jarsas ansak kaldo.*
- *Veleste Pekka seske tus kudov.*
- *Pekkan Saranso arasel skazo molems teatrav.*
- *Saranso Pekkan molš meleze.*
- *Pekka ez teje vejkejak foto – meleze arasel.*

**Exercise 6.** Complete the following sentences (translate the phrases in brackets or add a phrase of your own).

- Pekka tonavthize erzan keleti, seks ...* (he wanted to meet Erzyan people).  
*Seske koda Pekka sas Saranov, ...* (he met with colleagues from the University of Mordovia).  
*Veleti ericatne kortit erzan kelse, seks ...* (Pekka left Saransk for the country).  
*Pekka kortas sire lomanitnen marto – ...* (they spoke about their life in the old days).  
*Pekkan melezenze tus velese astemas – ...* (he spoke only Erzya there).  
*Saranso Pekkan ulnes skazo – ...* (he went to museums and to the theater).  
*Erzan mastorstto Pekka uski snarija fotot, ...* (he showed the photos to Tiina).

**Exercise 7.** Use the ablative forms of the nouns below, as in the examples given on the top row:

<i>Šimems veđte</i>	<i>Jarsams topodo</i>	<i>Kortams íevde</i>
<i>puře</i>	<i>kši</i>	<i>ekzamen</i>
<i>lovso</i>	<i>siveł</i>	<i>eřamo</i>
<i>čaj</i>	<i>umar</i>	<i>lomań</i>
<i>limonad</i>	<i>panžakaj</i>	<i>kažne</i>
<i>kofija</i>	<i>kujar</i>	<i>ška</i>
<i>koj-meže</i>	<i>eřva meže</i>	<i>mežejak</i>

**Exercise 8.** Visit the following links: view the scenes of life of the Erzyans displayed in photos and video clips (the video clips were made in the museum of the village of *Tavla*, which was the cottage of Vladimir Romashkin, the founder of the Torama folk group).

<http://purgine.livejournal.com/tag/%D0%BA%D0%B0%D1%80%D1%82%D0%B8%D0%BD%D1%8B>

<http://pik-tanya.livejournal.com/463403.html>

<http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=GJWWIhAY-c&feature=plcp>

## TEXT 2

A song from childhood, about a rabbit:

– *A numolkaj, numolkaj,  
Meks, numolkaj, mazijňat?*  
– *Ťetam-avam mazijňelŭ.*  
– *A numolkaj, numolkaj,  
Meks, numolkaj, ašiňat?*  
– *Ťetam-avam ašiňelŭ.*  
*A ta-ti, a ta-ti ...*  
*Moľan kšiňem varčasa,*  
*Pařak, šejeł saliže –*  
*Kapsta piřes kandiže.*

**Exercise 9.** Complete the following sentences.

- ....., *šeks son ulňes mazijňe.*
- ....., *šeks son ulňes ašiňe.*
- Šejeleňt pekeze vačs, šeks* .....
- Salaž kšiňeňt* .....

**Exercise 10.** Study the use of the word *meł* in the fixed expressions *mełs tujems* ‘to be pleasing, appeal to’, *meł-* (+ genitive) *moľems* ‘to get bored, to long for’, *meł-* (+ genitive) *ulems* ‘to want, desire’. Use the appropriate forms of these expressions to complete the sentences below:

*Moň mełs moroš ... . Melezenze íe íevs ež ... . Jarsamopeles melezenk ... ? Mařavi, sinst melest ... . Čis parol, ejkakštneň melest ež ... . Ombo mastorso melenk ...? Moň ... melem ramams od mašina. Miňek araš ... moľems kafeterijav. Kiň ... meleze nejems od filmaňt?*

**Exercise 11.** Answer the questions:

*Jakiť kovgak jutkoškasto /ielňa /kizna?*  
*Škamot /Kije marto jakiť lembe mastorov?*  
*Mejse ardiť? Busso /pojezdse /mašinaso?*

*Snars jakit' tov?*  
*Koso erit' /eride?*  
*Meze nejit' /nejide?*  
*Mezde jarsiť-šimit' ki langso?*  
*Melezeť tuť tarkať/ tuť tarkatne?*  
*Uli meleť tago moľems tov?*

**Exercise 12.** Describe a memorable vacation you've taken (approx. 150 words).

Useful expressions:

*Uli meľem nejems lamo tarkat /mastort. Ki langso vastan lamo lomaňt, mujan jalgat.*  
*Ardňemste mon tejan lamo fotot. Kizna jakit' ...*

**Exercise 13.** Match the Erzya onomatopoeic expressions below with their English equivalents/explanations, then use them to complete the sentences.

<i>kuldor-kaldor</i>	splash, lapping
<i>losk-losk</i>	warble, chirp, twitter
<i>peť-peť</i>	movement of a cart or buggy
<i>kalck-kalck</i>	stomping with feet
<i>dubor-dubor</i>	muscle twitching
<i>nock-nock</i>	hitting, striking (wood)
<i>čiv-čiv</i>	throbbing, pulsation
<i>šolk-šolk</i>	rustle, murmur
<i>kaštor-kaštor</i>	silence
<i>a kuš-a kaš</i>	dripping liquid
<i>zeť</i>	rumble, roar

*Krandazoš ardi – ... .. Praž lopatne piľgeňek alo – ... .. Kudoš čavo – ... .. Narmon*  
*mori – ... .. Alašatne ardit' – ... .. Vedeš čudi – ... .. Viť keřit – ... ..*

### VOCABULARY *Valks*

<i>ardoms</i>	to drive	<i>numolo</i>	hare, rabbit
<i>ardňems</i>	to drive (repeatedly)	<i>odiřva</i>	young wife
<i>avardems</i>	to cry	<i>oš</i>	town
<i>čeca</i>	flower	<i>ozams</i>	to sit
<i>čire, šiře</i>	bank, edge	<i>pačkodems</i>	to arrive
<i>čapamo lovso</i>	buttermilk	<i>pango</i>	mushroom
<i>čudems</i>	to pour, flow	<i>panžakaj</i>	pie
<i>čuvto</i>	tree, wood	<i>pařak</i>	maybe, hopefully
<i>čuvtoň kudo</i>	wooden house	<i>peť</i>	through
<i>čijems</i>	to run	<i>pižeme</i>	rain
<i>eřva koso</i>	everywhere	<i>pižems</i>	to rain
<i>eřva meze</i>	everything	<i>pojezd</i>	train
<i>ikele, -ň</i>	in front of /before, previous	<i>purnams</i>	to gather up
<i>inže</i>	guest	<i>prams</i>	to fall
<i>jakavtoms</i>	to make (someone) go	<i>purnavoms</i>	to gather (come)
<i>jorams</i>	to prepare	<i>řiznems</i>	to worry
<i>jutams</i>	to go, pass by	<i>salams</i>	to steal
<i>jutkoška</i>	free time	<i>šejel</i>	hedgehog
<i>kafedra</i>	chair, (sub)department	<i>šarija</i>	some, quite a lot
<i>kalmolango</i>	graveyard	<i>sovams</i>	to enter

<i>kandoms</i>	to carry	<i>sokor</i>	blind
<i>keňardoms</i>	to rejoice, gladden	<i>sulika</i>	glass
<i>keřams</i>	to cut	<i>tago-sňardo</i>	sometime(s)
<i>ki langso</i>	on the way/road	<i>tapams</i>	to crush
<i>koj-meže</i>	something	<i>tašto</i>	old
<i>krandaz</i>	cart	<i>topo</i>	curd cheese
<i>kujar</i>	cucumber	<i>uli-paro</i>	fortune
<i>kunška</i>	middle	<i>umok, -oň</i>	long ago, ancient
<i>kurok, -sto</i>	quick, -ly	<i>uskoms</i>	to bring, pull
<i>mařams</i>	to hear, feel	<i>učoms</i>	to wait
<i>mařavoms</i>	to be heard, felt, to seem	<i>vaňks</i>	clean
<i>mele(-m) moľs</i>	I got bored, I long for	<i>vastoms</i>	to meet
<i>meľmoľema</i>	boredom, longing	<i>varčams</i>	to try
<i>nalkške</i>	toy	<i>veřams</i>	to pull, send

## Unit 10 *Kemeňće peľks*

### GRAMMAR

#### Conditional mood

The Erzya verb system features a variety of grammatical moods which express the speaker's attitude toward the reality /realizability of the activity described. In addition to the conditional mood, these include the conjunctive, conditional-conjunctive, optative, and desiderative. This unit will cover two of these moods: the conditional and the conjunctive.

The conditional mood expresses actions or states which are necessary for the future realization of another action or state. The conditional expression forms a subordinate clause, with the verb in the main clause appearing in the present/future tense. An Erzya conditional sentence thus corresponds to an English *if* sentence with a present-tense verb in the subordinate clause and a future-tense verb in the main clause, e.g.:

*Uľiňdeřaj škam, moľan veľev.* 'If I have time, I'll go to the country'.

Note that the Erzya sentence above does not include a separate word meaning 'if'; rather, the meaning of 'if' is encapsulated in the conditional verb form.

Conditional (indefinite conjugation) forms:

Past simple first person singular form + *-deř-* + present tense personal ending

<i>Mon</i>	<i>jarsiň-deřan</i>	<i>šimiň-deřan</i>
<i>Ton</i>	<i>jarsiň-deřat</i>	<i>šimiň-deřat</i>
<i>Son</i>	<i>jarsiň-deřaj</i>	<i>šimiň-deřaj</i>
<i>Miň</i>	<i>jarsiň-deřatano</i>	<i>šimiň-deřatano</i>
<i>Tiň</i>	<i>jarsiň-deřatado</i>	<i>šimiň-deřatado</i>
<i>Siň</i>	<i>jarsiň-deřajt</i>	<i>šimiň-deřajt</i>

The suffix *-deř-* derives from the verb *ieřavtoms* 'to try', which historically joined with the preceding verb to make a compound form.

## Conjunctive mood

The conjunctive expresses an action or state which the speaker considers counterfactual, i.e. unreal or unlikely to take place; conjunctive forms often express the speaker's desire. The conjunctive marker is the suffix  $-v(o)\acute{l}/-v(e)\acute{l}$ . The conjunctive roughly corresponds to English *would*.

Conjunctive (indefinite conjugation) forms:

stem +  $-v(o)\acute{l}/-v(e)\acute{l}$  + past simple personal ending

<i>Mon</i>	<i>jarsavliń</i>	<i>śimevliń</i>
<i>Ton</i>	<i>jarsavlić</i>	<i>śimevlić</i>
<i>Son</i>	<i>jarsavol</i>	<i>śimevel</i>
<i>Miń</i>	<i>jarsavlińek</i>	<i>śimevlińek</i>
<i>Tiń</i>	<i>jarsavliđe</i>	<i>śimevliđe</i>
<i>Siń</i>	<i>jarsavolć</i>	<i>śimevelć</i>

The past simple personal endings may be related to forms of the verb *uľems*, where the appearance of *v* in place of *u* intervocalically is to be expected.

Conditional and conjunctive (definite conjugation) forms (e.g. *morams morońć*):

	Conditional	Conjunctive
<i>Mon</i>	<i>moriń-ďeřasa</i>	<i>mora-vľija</i>
<i>Ton</i>	<i>moriń-ďeřasak</i>	<i>mora-vľik</i>
<i>Son</i>	<i>moriń-ďeřasi</i>	<i>mora-vľiže</i>
<i>Miń</i>	<i>moriń-ďeřasińek</i>	<i>mora-vľińek</i>
<i>Tiń</i>	<i>moriń-ďeřasink</i>	<i>mora-vľink</i>
<i>Siń</i>	<i>moriń-ďeřasiź</i>	<i>mora-vľiź</i>

Examples of the use of the conditional and conjunctive, in both the indefinite and definite conjugations, are presented below:

Conditional (indefinite conjugation):

*Molińďeřan Saranov, sovan Sćepan Erzań galeřejas.*  
If I go to Saransk, I'll visit the Stepan Erzya art gallery.  
*Uľińďeřaji satořka jarmakon, moľan ombo mastorov.*  
If I have enough money, I'll go abroad.

Conjunctive (indefinite conjugation):

*Moľevliń Saranov, sovavliń Sćepan Erzań galeřejas.*  
If I went to Saransk, I would visit the Stepan Erzya art gallery.  
*Uľevlić satořka jarmakon, moľevliń ombo mastorov.*  
If I had enough money, I would go abroad.

Conditional and conjunctive (definite conjugation):

*Ñejińďeřasa, kortan martonzo.* If I see him, I'll speak with him.  
*Ñejevľija, kortavliń martonzo.* If I saw him, I'd speak with him.

Negative forms of both the conditional and conjunctive consist of the negation word *a* followed by the conjugated verb form; however, in the conjunctive, negation is also possible by means of the word *avól*. In this case, *avól*- behaves similarly to the past tense negative verb *ež*-, receiving the appropriate personal endings and being followed by the verb stem.

Conditional (indefinite /definite):

*A sajińdeřat jarsamopeł /a sajińdeřasak jarsamopeleńt martot – aštat vačopeke.*

If you don't take any food along, you'll end up hungry.

Conjunctive (indefinite):

*A sajevliń /avoliń saje jarsamopeł martot – aštevliń vačopeke.*

If you didn't take any food along, you'd end up hungry.

Conjunctive (definite):

*A sajevlik /avolik saje jarsamopeleńt martot – aštevliń vačopeke.*

If you didn't take the food along, you'd end up hungry.

## Derivational Suffixes

Erzya verbal morphology features a number of productive derivational suffixes, including:

- The frequentative suffixes **-ś, -n/-ń, -kšn**, which express repeated or continuous action: *morams – morśems, jakams – jakśems, kortams – kortńems, vanoms – vannoms, sams – sakšnoms*;
- The reflexive / passive suffix **-v**: *purams ‘to collect, gather’ – puravoms ‘to come together, gather (intr.)’, šlams ‘to wash’ – šlavoms ‘to be washed’, ějems ‘to see’ – ějavoms ‘to be seen, be visible’*;
- The causative suffix **-vt/-vń**: *karmams ‘to start doing something’ – karmavtoms ‘to make someone do something’, sovams ‘to enter’ – sovavtoms ‘to let in, insert, include’, jomams ‘to disappear’ – jomavtoms ‘to lose’, ějems ‘to see’ – ěvńtoms ‘to show’*.

**Exercise 1.** Conjugate the verbs *jutams, kužems, pačkodems, and sovams* in the conditional and conjunctive.

**Exercise 2.** Add the appropriate adverbials (*ěse /toso, ěze /tozo, ěj /tov, ěja /tuva*) to the following conditional and conjunctive verb forms, e.g. *sovavliń tozo*:

*sovavliń      sovińdeřat*  
*tujevliń      tujińdeřat*  
*jutavliń      jutińdeřat*  
*molevliń      molińdeřat*  
*jakavliń      jakińdeřat*  
*aštevliń      aštińdeřat*  
*ojmševliń    ojmšićdeřat*

**Exercise 3.** Form sentences by joining the phrases on the left with the appropriate continuations on the right.

<i>Sińdeřaj šimemat,</i>	<i>ežemeš čavo, ozak, ojmsik</i>
<i>Vačińdeřaj peket,</i>	<i>kečeš onot koso, šimt</i>
<i>Sińdeřaj udomat,</i>	<i>sovak klubs, toso sval eřšit studentt</i>
<i>Šižińdeřajt piłget,</i>	<i>panžakajńtne onot kosot, jarsak</i>
<i>Ulińdeřaj melet,</i>	<i>tarkaš acaž – ažo, madt</i>
<i>Jutińdeřaj udomat,</i>	<i>sajt kińiga, lovnok</i>
<i>Sovińdeřat viřs,</i>	<i>ila puto lamo sal</i>
<i>Pidińdeřat jam,</i>	<i>ilak jomavto kińt</i>

**Exercise 4.** Put the infinitives in brackets into the conditional to complete the sentences.

(Tujems) *íe kivańt, pačkodíado parkońteń.*  
(Sams) *parkov, nejít toso erva-kodamo cécat.*  
(Úlems) *meńenk kortams kińgak marto, mońede čokšne parkov. Parkoš lomańde peškse.*  
(Sams) *šimemank, (vačoms) pekenk, sovado kafeteřijas.*  
(Šízems) – *parksońt erva kuva ašití ežemí. Ozak, alamos ojmšek.*  
*Parksońt ulít nuřamot. (Úlems) meńenk, nuřatado.*

**Exercise 5.** Translate the following sentences into English, paying attention to the use of derivational suffixes:

*Miń jakšinek viřev lńečiste, toso moršinek, kortńinek.*  
*Mon vannin veše fototńeń.*  
*Avaš karmaš tujeme – karmavtinže ejkakštneń kudoń teveń tejeme.*  
*Inžeńt jakavtiž kudodo kudos.*  
*Čorińeš sovavtiže kiska-ľevkseńt kudińeńteń.*  
*Saš pokš čiš. Miń purnavińek vejs.*  
*Alće ošoš nejavi parosto pando přastońt. Mon nevńin mazij tarkatńeń.*  
*Valmatńe šlavst, nej alamodo ojmšetano.*  
*Pačam jumaš. Jumavtija pačam.*

## CONVERSATION AND READING Kortamo – lovnoma

### Saranso In Saransk

<i>inžeń kudo</i>	guest house
<i>alće / veřće ošoń pelks</i>	upper / lower part of a city
<i>vakss, vakss, vakska:</i>	
<i>úlems vakss</i>	to be next to (smth)
<i>mońems vakss</i>	to go next to (smth)
<i>jutams vakska</i>	to pass, go past
<i>kunška (tarka)</i>	center
<i>mařavi ...</i>	it seems ...
<i>ńejavi ...</i>	it appears ...
<i>ono / onot koso</i>	look, there it is...
<i>kizeń peřt</i>	all summer long
<i>ľijat-mežt</i>	other things
<i>mekev samsto-+-m, -t, -nzo, -nok, -nk, -st</i>	on (my) coming back
<i>udoma-+-m, -t, -zo, -nok, -nk, -st si / saš</i>	(I, you, etc) fall / fell asleep
<i>šimema-+-m, -t, -zo, -nok, -nk, -st si / saš</i>	(I, you, etc) get / got thirsty
<i>peke-+-m, -t, -ze, -ńek, -nk, -st vači / vačš</i>	(my, your, etc stomach) get / got hungry

### TEXT 1

#### Istořijań-etnografijań muzej

*Saranoń alće ošońt 1918 ijeste panžovš istořijań, etnografijań, peřt-pelkseń muzej. Saranov sičatńe, eřičatńejak paro meńse sovít mužejs. Mon ejkakšpingste lamokšt jakiń tov školań jalgatńeń marto, sńardo-sńardo škamomgak. Kuvat ašitń še tarkańt ikele, koso ulńešt ikelen škań oršamońne-karšematńe, eřamokudoš. Mužejsenít aštešt kevste, kšńiste, šovońste, sulikasto, čovalasto tejež erva-mežt. Arheologijań, istořijań sodičatńe šormadšt kosto siń sajevšt. Ejkakštne jala vannošt rakšań-*

narmuñeñ šačoñeñ. Čoriñeñe jakaš vanomo kezeñeñ škañ naltneñ, užeñeñ, ušmanoñ oršamoñeñ. Moliñdeñan Saranov, tago sovan mužejs. Nejevlíja šeñ, mežeš ulñeš toso ejkakšpingstem, šeñgak, mežeš putož ods.

**Exercise 6.** Answer the questions:

*Šardo pañžiz istoñijañ, etnografijañ, peñt-pełkseñ mužejeñ Saranso?  
Koso ašti mužeješ?  
Mežt ulit mužejeñt ?  
Mežeš tuji šede pek mełs ejkakštneñeñ, čoriñeñeñeñ?  
Moliñdeñat Saranov, sovat mužejs?  
Mežt vanovlit toso?*

**Exercise 7.** Visit the following link: view the history museum with the help of the visitor's guide provided on the website.

[www.mrkm.ru/main/virt\\_ekskurs/](http://www.mrkm.ru/main/virt_ekskurs/)

## TEXT 2

### Saranso

*Aniko saš Saranov studenteñ konfeñencijav. Inžeñ kudoso sonze vastize Pietro, student Italijasto. Songak saš finneñ-ugrañ keleñ konfeñencijañeñ. Od lomaññe tušt jalgo uniñersitetev. Pietro ulñeš Saranso šede ikelejok, son parosto sodilize kiñt. Inžeñ kudoš ašti alče ošoñt. Siñ jutaš mužejeñ vakska, pačkodšt pokš parkoñ vakss, mejle kužšt veřev, oš-kunškañt vids. Toso siñ alamos aštešt, alov vanož ñešt mazijdejok mazij peñt-pełks. Kelej ulčava siñ tušt uniñersiteteñt pelev.*

*Aniko Vant, ta-kodamo muzej.  
Pietro Te istoñijañ-etnografijañ mužeješ.  
Aniko Ton ulit toso?  
Pietro Ulit, anšak šeste škam alamoł. Paro mełse sovavlit odov. Valske uniñersitetev molemado ikele sovan, uliñdeñaj škam.  
Aniko Šeste mongak molevlit martot.  
Pietro Paro, moltano veise.  
Aniko Mařavi, Saranoš a pek umokoñ oš.  
Pietro Vide, son ušodovš 1641 ijeste sajež. Šeste tija jutaš ružoñ mastortneñ piřavks jonoš, Saranoš ulñeš vanstoma ošoks. Vana teše čudeš Saranka lej, son koškš. Toso ulñeš kelej načko tarka. Od škasto tija noldašt čudikerks, veřašt vijev fontant-lišmapřat, tarkañt velitž kevse, grañitse.  
Aniko Mon lovniñ, Saranoñ malava čudi Insar-lej.  
Pietro Vant tona pelev, onot koso, alamodo ñejavi.  
Aniko Te mazij parkoš, ulema, umokoñ.  
Pietro Parkoš botanikañ piřeñ koñdamo, son umokoñ, pek parosto vanstož. Saranoñ eričatñeñeñ son večkaviks tarka. Kizeñ peñt lamot siť lej jutkoškasto. Čokšne ñejat parkso anšak od lomañt.  
Aniko Paro mełse sovavlit vanomonzo.  
Pietro Mekev samsto sovatano, uliñdeñaj melet.  
Aniko Ono tona pele ñejavi Disneylanoñ koñdamo tarka – vant, pokš-čarij, litat mežit...  
Pietro Še tarkaškak ñejañ škasto ištamoks tejež. Kuvať teše ašteš anšak stadion. Nesak, ono toso. Šede tašto stadionoš ašti ošoñt veřce pełksse, uniñersiteteñt vaksso. Miñ nej kužtano veřev, grañitse veřaž kijavañt, kuva noldaž čudikerkseš. Pačkodtano ošoñt kunškas.  
Aniko Moñ mełs pek tuji te tarkaš. Uniñersiteteš vasolo tešte?  
Pietro A vasolo. Šižit?  
Aniko Ežit. Aštetano alamoška teše, vantano. Malaso ñejavi od čerkovañ přa.*



- Pietro *Ťe oznoma kudoš ślavtož mejleće škasto. Saranso śede ikele ulnešć pek lamo oznomañ tarkat – ćerkovat, monastiřć. Sinst mejle kalavtiž, konañ-konañ řejiz muzejeks-mežeks. Saranso tago-śńardo eřašć śupav mikšńićat, ijeñ perć jutašć najmant-jarmunkat. Ja, miñ paćkodiñek kelej tarkańeñ ošońć kunškaso, koso eřšićć pokš jarmunkatńe.*
- Aniko *Sodat, mon ramavliń lćteratura eřzań keľse, kodatkak suveńirt.*
- Pietro *Ťeste a vasolo uli vejke kińigañ lavka, koso śńardo-śńardo eřšićć eřzań-mokšoń keľse śormadož kińigat, pařak mežejak ramatano.*

**Exercise 8.** Mark the following statements true or false (*vide /a vide*):

- Aniko Pietro marto sašć Italijasto.*
- Siń tuřistt, řej molićć ekskuršijav.*
- Aniko ulnešć Saranso ikeľejak.*
- Saranoñ malava ćudi Saranka-ľej.*
- Insar-ľejješ Saransto vasolo.*
- Saranoñ kunška tarkaš ašć pando přaso.*
- Pando přasto parosto řejavi alće ošoš.*
- Ošońć tago-śńardo eřašć śupav mikšńićat.*
- Saranoñ kunškaso eřšićć pokš jarmunkat.*
- Saranošć pek umokoń oš.*

**Exercise 9.** Make a short oral presentation about your hometown or the place where you currently live. You should mention: how old the place is, its development, noteworthy facts about its past and present, your favorite places, the population (demographics, characteristics etc), famous people from there, etc.

### TEXT 3

#### *Konferencijado*

*Finneñ-ugrañ kelńeđe eřšićć studenteñ konferencijat, konat jutić eřva ijeste ľija tarkaso. Ulnešć konferencija Saransojak. Koda eřšićć sval, konferencijašć jutašć řekćijava. Kortašć fonetıkado, morfologijado, śemantikado, sotsiolingvistıkado. Lamot sašć řekćijas, koso kortamotńe molšć śormadoma (ľijaks meřems, lćteraturañ) kelńeđe. Eřzań, mokšoń, ľija rašketńeñ keľse śormadoma luvošć a pek umokoń, son vejs putož 1920-će ijeńeste sajež. Eřzań keľeñ śormadoma luvońć vejs putomsto pokš ľezeks ulnešćć sodaviks eřzań lingvistne M. E. Jevsejev, A. P. Řabov\*. Konferencijasonić kortašć kelńeñ istorijadost, pek lamo kevksćemat ulnešćć řeńde, koda kiřdemšć ešć keľeńć.*

*\*Makar E. Jevsejev (1864–1931), Anatolij P. Řabov (1894–1938) lingvistt; eřzań keľde, kulćurado śormadićat.*

**Exercise 10.** Translate Text 3 into English.

## VOCABULARY *Valks*

<i>čovaľat</i>	pearls	<i>nuřamo</i>	swing
<i>čudems</i>	to pour, flow	<i>odov</i>	again
<i>čudikeřks</i>	flowing water	<i>oš</i>	town, <i>city</i>
<i>duřman</i>	enemy, foe	<i>oznoms</i>	to worship
<i>eřavoms</i>	to be needed /necessary	<i>parolřadoms</i>	to get better
<i>eřšems</i>	to happen	<i>pačkodems</i>	to arrive
<i>ežem</i>	bench	<i>paršej</i>	silk
<i>fontan</i>	fountain	<i>perř-pelks</i>	nature, surroundings
<i>iřtamo</i>	this /that kind of	<i>peřkše</i>	full
<i>jarmunka</i>	market	<i>piřavř jonks</i>	endline
<i>jomavřoms, ju-</i>	to lose	<i>pokř-čarij</i>	big wheel
<i>jutkořka</i>	free time	<i>potso</i>	inside
<i>kalavřoms</i>	to demolish, tear down	<i>putoms</i>	to put
<i>karřo</i>	against, opposite	<i>rakřa</i>	animal
<i>kařřaz</i>	wreath	<i>řija</i>	silver
<i>keđ</i>	skin	<i>siřne</i>	gold
<i>keľej, -řadoms</i>	wide, to widen	<i>řizems</i>	to become tired
<i>kořkems</i>	to dry up	<i>sovoms</i>	to enter
<i>kudopotmo</i>	interior of a building	<i>řovoň</i>	clay
<i>kužems</i>	to go up	<i>řupav</i>	rich
<i>ľemdems</i>	to name	<i>sval</i>	always
<i>ľijakřtomoms</i>	to become different, change	<i>řačo</i>	form, figure, face, image
<i>ľijanaz</i>	linen	<i>řa-kodamo</i>	a kind of
<i>ľiřmapřa</i>	source, spring	<i>řuřems</i>	to fight, battle
<i>ľuv</i>	custom	<i>ulća</i>	street
<i>mađems</i>	to go to bed	<i>uskoms</i>	to bring, pull
<i>načko tarka</i>	swamp, bog	<i>uřman</i>	warrior
<i>mikřřnića</i>	seller, trader	<i>uřodoms</i>	to begin
<i>nal</i>	arrow	<i>vanřoms</i>	to protect, guard
<i>najman</i>	marketplace	<i>užeře</i>	axe
<i>narmuň</i>	bird	<i>vaks/so,-s, -řto</i>	beside, to the side, from the side
<i>ňevřems</i>	to show	<i>vaľma</i>	window, vitrine
<i>noldams</i>	to free, let go	<i>veiře</i>	together
<i>nuřams</i>	to swing	<i>veľřams</i>	to cover
		<i>viđs</i>	until



Source: <https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/Category:Saransk?>

## Appendix I. Standard Written Erzya – The Cyrillic Alphabet

The Erzya written language was developed in the 1920s. Since that time, standard Erzya has been written in the Cyrillic alphabet:

Аа	Бб	Вв	Гг	Дд	Ее	Ёё	Жж	Зз
Ии	Йй	Кк	Лл	Мм	Нн	Оо	Пп	Рр
Сс	Тт	Уу	Фф	Хх	Цц	Чч	Шш	Щщ
Ъъ	Ыы	Ьь	Ээ	Юю	Яя			

The following letters represent consonants:

б	в	г	д	ж	з	й	к	л	м	н	п	р	с	т	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ
<i>b</i>	<i>v</i>	<i>g</i>	<i>d</i>	<i>ž</i>	<i>z</i>	<i>j</i>	<i>k</i>	<i>l</i>	<i>m</i>	<i>n</i>	<i>p</i>	<i>r</i>	<i>s</i>	<i>t</i>	<i>f</i>	<i>h</i>	<i>c</i>	<i>č</i>	<i>š</i>	<i>šč</i>

The vowels of the Cyrillic alphabet also reflect the palatalization (or lack thereof) of the preceding consonant. Each of the five vowels of Erzya (*a, e, i, o, u*) is represented by two different letters, which serve to denote the preceding palatalized and unpalatalized consonants.

и/ы	е/э	ю/у	ё/о	я/а
<i>i</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>a</i>

In each of the pairs above, the letter on the left indicates that the preceding consonant is palatalized. Compare for example the verbs *стамс* (*stams*) and *стямс* (*stams*). Observe how palatalization is reflected in the spelling of the following proper nouns:

Тюштя *Tušta*, Турпур *Turpur*, Паксяй *Paksaj*, Сырнява *Sirňava*, Сюмерьге *Šumerge*, Ламзурь *Lamzur'*, Паруш *Paruš*, Пуреш *Pureš*, Лёса *Łosa*, Охрем *Ohrem*, Литова *Litova*, Татю *Tatu*.

Palatalization is also marked by the letter **ь**, which is used to mark a palatalized consonant at the end of a syllable (or word) or before an unpalatalized consonant, e.g. Сюмерьге *Šumerge*. When two palatalized consonants appear consecutively, the letter **ь** is used only once, after the final consonant, e.g. умарь 'apple' – умарь 'apples'. The only exception to this rule is the consonant **л**; palatalized **л** (*l* in Latin transcription) is always marked with a **ь** sign, even when followed by another palatalized consonant, e.g. кель, кельть 'language, languages'. Some Russian loanwords also include the letter **ь**, which marks an unpalatalized consonant on a morpheme boundary, e.g. подъезд (prefix *pod-* + *jezd*) 'staircase'.

At the beginning of a syllable, the letters **и, е, ё, ю, я** represent the combinations *ji, je, jo, ju, ja*, e.g. якамс *jakams* 'to go, visit', ваямс *vajams* 'to sink', ёвтамс *jovtams* 'to say', юр *jur* 'root', мии *miji* 'sells', саемс *sajems* 'to take, get'. When following a vowel, the consonant *j* in the combinations *ji* and *je* may partially or even completely disappear, e.g. *mi(j)i* 'sells', *sa(j)ems* 'to take, get'.

The combinations *ji* and *je* do not appear word-initially. In earlier loans, *je* is replaced by *e, o* or *jo*, e.g. *eščo, oščo* 'still' (Russian ещё, *ješčo*); *Olona, Ohrem, Jogor* (Russian Елена, *Jelena*; Ефрем, *Jefrem*; Егор, *Jegor*). In modern loanwords, word-initial *je* may be preserved, e.g. *jedinstva* (Russian единство 'unity').

The phoneme *e* in word-initial position is marked by the letter **э**, e.g. эрзя (*erža*) 'Erzya' (in other positions, the letter **э** indicates a preceding unpalatalized consonant). By contrast, word-initial *i* is marked by the letter **и**, e.g. инже *inže* 'guest' (in other positions, the letter **и** indicates a preceding palatalized consonant).

Note that words beginning with *jo-*, *ju-*, *ja-*, and *je-* appear in dictionaries under the letters **ё, ю, я** and **е** respectively.

You may also encounter the handwritten Cyrillic script, which in addition to being used in handwriting, also appears when word-processed text is italicized. There are several letters that look quite different in the handwritten (italicized) script than in the printed script. To help resolve this confusion, the Cyrillic alphabet in italics is presented below:

<i>Aa</i>	<i>Бб</i>	<i>Вв</i>	<i>Гг</i>	<i>Дд</i>	<i>Ее</i>	<i>Ёё</i>	<i>Жж</i>	<i>Зз</i>
<i>Ии</i>	<i>Йй</i>	<i>Кк</i>	<i>Лл</i>	<i>Мм</i>	<i>Нн</i>	<i>Оо</i>	<i>Пп</i>	<i>Рр</i>
<i>Сс</i>	<i>Тт</i>	<i>Уу</i>	<i>Фф</i>	<i>Хх</i>	<i>Цц</i>	<i>Чч</i>	<i>Шш</i>	<i>Щщ</i>
<i>Ъъ</i>	<i>Ыы</i>	<i>Ьь</i>	<i>Ээ</i>	<i>Юю</i>	<i>Яя</i>			

Example:

Покш Толкан веле

Покш Толкан велень эрзятне састь Самара ёнов, Рав чирес 18-це пингестэ. Эрзятнень мельс тусть кавто лей (Покш Кинель, Вишка Кинель) ютксо сравтозь модатне. Пандызь те тарканть кисэ эрзавикс ярмаконтъ – ведьгемень целковойть сиясо. Тесэнь таркатне мазыйдеяк мазыйть – вирь, пандо, латкт, лисьмапрят. Эрицятне сокасть-видесть, кассть эмежть. Паксятне макссть сюлав товзюро, розь, пинеме. Иеде иес кудотне ламолгадсть. Теке пангот кепедсть лия велетнеяк. Те шкас ванстовсть кезэрень кудо юртт, ашо кевстэ теезь ведьгев. Ведьгевесь канды лезэ те шкас. Покш Толкансо чачсть-кассть содавикс эрзянь сермадыцятне Тимофей Раптанов, Василий Радаев, Числав Журавлёв.

(see <http://vaigel.ru/article/all/2> for more details)



	вейке	1
	кавто	2
	колмо	3
	ниле	4
/	вете	5
/	кото	6
/	сисем	7
/	кавксо	8
/	вейксэ	9
^	кемень	10
^	кемвейкее	11
^	кемкавтово	12
^	кемколмово	13
^	кемнилее	14
^	кемветее	15
^	кемкотово	16
^	кемсисемге	17
^	кемкавксово	18
^	кемвейксэе	19
^^	комсь	20
^	ниленькемень	49
^	ветенькемень	50
↘	сядо	100
↘	ветесядт	500
↘	тёжа	1000
↘	эзь пандо	не уплачено
↘	пандозь	уплачено
↘	авесе пандозь	недонмка

Source: <http://uralistica.com/photo/1884-1884?context=user>; <http://uralistica.com/photo/erzyan-lovmat?context=user>

## Appendix II. Key to Answers

### Introduction: Overview of Pronunciation and Phonology

#### Exercise 3

<i>ćorat</i>	<i>kuzt</i>	<i>sazort</i>
<i>kalt</i>	<i>łepet</i>	<i>śedejt</i>
<i>keđt</i>	<i>łomańt</i>	<i>tejteřt</i>
<i>kełt</i>	<i>pešt</i>	<i>tumot</i>
<i>kudot</i>	<i>řivežit</i>	<i>vazt</i>

#### Exercise 4

voiceless consonant + -kak	voiced consonant + -gak	vowel + -jak
<i>jarmakkak</i>	<i>kełgak</i>	<i>avajak</i>
<i>śokśkak</i>	<i>vedgak</i>	<i>kudojak</i>
<i>tumotkak</i>	<i>veřgak</i>	<i>kšijak</i>
<i>łomańkak</i>	<i>łovgak</i>	<i>teštejak</i>
	<i>valgak</i>	<i>maksojak</i>
	<i>řivežgak</i>	<i>peštejak</i>
	<i>śedejgak</i>	<i>velejak</i>

### Introduction: Word Stock

#### Exercise 5

*śedej, san, mołems, kal, ej, śelme, nile, kolmo, veće, koto, śiśem, kavkso, kemeń*

### Unit 1

#### Exercise 4

*eřams: eřan, eřat, eři, eřatano, eřatado, eřit*  
*aštems: aštan aštat, ašti, aštetano, aštetado, aštit*  
*nejems: nejan, nejat, neji, nejitano, nejitado, nejit*

#### Exercise 6

- *Kijat? – Studentan.*
- *Ton eřzat? – Avoł, mon estonan. Ton eřzat?*
- *Avoł, mon finnan.*
- *Kije te? – Vengra.*
- *Son student? – Student.*

#### Exercise 7

<i>mon</i>	<i>studentan</i>
<i>ton</i>	<i>studentat</i>
<i>son</i>	<i>student</i>
<i>miń</i>	<i>studenttano</i>
<i>tiń</i>	<i>studenttado</i>
<i>siń</i>	<i>studentt</i>

Exercise 14

*Te – univērsītet. Nētne – studentt: kavto finnt, vejke vengra, vejke ruz, kolmo estont. Te – professor Kask, songak eston. Ilona avoļ eston, son vengra. Imrejak vengra. Ann, paro student. Son korti parosto anglaņ, ružoņ, finneņ kēse, tonavtni vengraņ keļ. Miņ tonavtnētano erzaņ keļ. Siņ korti erzaņ kēse.*

- Šumbratado! Tiņ studenttado? – Avoļ.
- Šumbratado! Tiņ vengratado? – Avoļ, miņ a vengratano. Miņ nemečtano.
- Koda erāt? – Sastiņeste.
- Paro či! – Nejemazonok!

**Unit 2**

Exercise 3

Where	From where	To where	Through where
<i>Saranso</i>	<i>Helsinkiste</i>	<i>Amerikav</i>	<i>Estonijava</i>
<i>Udmurtijaso</i>	<i>Moskovsto</i>	<i>Germanijav</i>	<i>Rigava</i>
	<i>Oslosto</i>	<i>Rakverev</i>	<i>Vengrijava</i>
	<i>Pärnusto</i>	<i>Tartuv</i>	
	<i>Tāļinnste</i>		

Exercise 5

*erāms + c, moļems + b, nejems + a, jakams + e, kortams + d*

Exercise 6

*a1, b3, c2, d4, e6, f5*

Exercise 8

*Kosat? – Tesan. Kov moļat? – Kinov. Kijat? – Studentan. Koso erāt? – Velese. Kodamo son? – Pek paro. Kije son? – Student. Kostoņat? – Naimanstan.*

Exercise 11

*kijat, koso, meže, tonavtnan, ton, tonavtnat, kortat, alamodo, parosto, moļan*

Exercise 12

*kije, kosat, avoļ, avoļ, meže, tonavtnan;  
kortat, kudosto, lovnan, araš, uli*

Exercise 13

a). *Mon moļan kudov. Teči mon a moļan kovgak. Mon moļan kinov. Tiņ jakatado /Ton jakat kinov? Son eri velese. Kostoņtado /Kostoņat? Siņ tonavtni univērsiēte. Koso ton tonavtnat? Miņ sodatano lamo morot. Ton sodat kodamojak moro? Mon šormadan šorma. Meže ton šormadat? Te mazij tarka. Kodamo mastorso ton erāt? Tiņ kortatado lamo kēse. Kijak korti erzaņ kēse? Mon a nejān mezejak. Meže ton nejat? Siņ erzat. Kijetado tiņ /Kijat ton? Miņ erātano parosto. Koda tiņ erātado /ton erāt?*

b). *Veiko finn. Son tonavtni estonoņ keļ Tartuņ Univērsiēte. Veiko paro čora, son tonavtni parosto. Veiko korti estonoņ kēse. Son jaki Vengrijav, koso korti vengraņ kēse. Nej Veiko tonavtni*

*eržan kelgak. Son lovni eržan kelse. Tartuü Ühiversitsetse tonavtni eržan tejer, Nataü. Son tonavtni anglaü kel. Nataü eržan veleste. Son mazij tejer. Nataü-Vejkot kortit estonoü, anglaü kelse. Nej Vejko korti alamodo eržan kelsejak. Mon ruzan. Mon Moskovstan. Mon tonavtnan estonoü, finnenj kel Tartuü Ühiversitsetse.*

### Unit 3

#### Exercise 9

- a) *a erän, ühiversitsetse, Tartuso, velev;*
- b) *jarsan, studenteü, kudosu, kaloü, kudoü, teatrav;*
- c) *lekcijav, kemeüste, busso, raman, kudoü;*
- d) *molat, ekskuršijav, a molan;*
- e) *kortit, a kortit;*
- f) *čis, ekskuršijav, čis;*
- g) *süaroška*

#### Exercise 10

*Meze tejat mejle?  
Meze tejat čokšne?  
Jakat teatrav(gak)?  
Molat kinov?  
Kuvaüs molat velev?*

#### Exercise 12

*korti, vanit; maksan; teleünek; jaksteere.*

#### Exercise 13

*Kadriü-Mikkü studentt. Süü teči a molit ühiversiteteü kafeterijav, toso lamo lomaüt. Süü jarsit Kadriü keüde (kudosu). Kadri teji kaloü jam. Čokšne teatraso od opera. Mikk molit čit teatraü kassav, rami biülett.*

*Mikk molit velev teči. Son molit busso. Mikk ašit velese a kuvaüs – kavtoška či. Son teji kudoü tevit. Kadri molit ekskuršijav mašinaso. Teči üli busoü ekskuršija Tallinev.*

*Ton teči kuvaü ulat bibliotekaso? Koso jarsat čit / čokšne? Ton tejat lamo kudoü tevit? Ton jakat teatrav? Ton molat teči ekskuršijav? Ton molat velev?*

### Unit 4

#### Exercise 3

- a) *pokš veles, tantej umares, es raškeü muzikaš, teatraü biületes, od mašinaš, šokšeü škaš;*
- b) *tejeritne püreset, lomaütne pakšasot, avatne kudosot, čoratne mašinaset, lekcijavitne ühiversitsete, studenttne kafeterijasot*

#### Exercise 9

*kortit, mon, od, jakan, süardo-süardo, koda, sastiüeste, miügak, tejtano, virev, čokšne, pakšaso*

### Exercise 13

*Kize. Medkov. Mon molan Saaremaa, ulan toso kemeňška či. Te mazijdejak mazij tarka Estoňijaso. Toso ulan jalgaň kudoso. Miň tejatano piřej, paksaň tevť, čokšne aštetano lija od lomaňtneň marto. Miň kunsolotano, moratano Saaremaaň morot. Siře lomaňtne morit pek parosto. Saaremaaň lomaňtne kortit eš kortavkssso.*

## Unit 5

### Exercise 3

*ojmšems, ojmšeme; panžoms, panžomo; morams, moramo; kištemš, kišteme; večkems, večkeme; tujems, tujeme; vikšněms, vikšněme; šormadoms, šormadomo; kunsoloms, kunsolomo; šizems, šizeme; sodams, sodamo*

### Exercise 4

1f., 2b., 3e., 4d., 5c., 6a

### Exercise 7

a) niľeće lomaňeš, b) omboće čisteňt, c) ombo mastorso, d) kolmoće kursoš, e) vašeňće ijesteňt

### Exercise 13

*Eřan Tartuso vašeňće ije. Tonavňhan Tartuň Uňiversitetse, koso kemšišemge tožeňška studentt. Tese ulit studentt Finlandijasto, Vengrijasto, Ruzoň Mastorso, Švedćijasto, Germaňijasto. Mon tonavňhan finneň-ugraň kelť. Jakan finneň, vengraň, erzaň, mařiň keleň šeminarov. Kunsolan lekćijat. Čokšne ojmšan kudoso, sňardo-sňardo jakan teatrav, kafeteřijav, diskotekav. Iřak jalga marto jakiňek Tallinnev. Ulňiňek ekskuršijaso. Tallinn Tartudo šede pokš. Miň ňejiňek lamo mazij tarkat. Čit jarsiňek kafeteřijaso. Čokšne 7 čassto tujiňek mekev Tartuv. Kudoso ulňiňek 9 čassto. Vaniňek televizor, kortiňek šeňde, meže ňejiňek Tallinnse. Kizna molťano Finlandijav tonavňtne finneň kelť.*

## Unit 6

### Exercise 2

a) keđem, surot, čeřem, sanot, pejem;  
b) mastorožo, ľejeze, viřeze, uňiversiteteze;  
c) jalaksonok, ľemeňek, sazoronok, uřažeňek;  
d) skalonk, sarazonk, řevenk, pursozonk;  
e) pileksest, eřgest, surksost, pulajest

### Exercise 4

<i>avaňt paćazo</i>	<i>ćoraňt – kemenze</i>	<i>stúdentneň šeminarost</i>
<i>stúdenetň jalgazo</i>	<i>tejteteňt čeřenze</i>	<i>ejkakšneň kudost</i>
<i>rašeňt eřamozo</i>	<i>teťatňt ejkakšonzo</i>	<i>eřzavaťneň pulajest</i>
<i>uřažeňt pariľazo</i>	<i>odirvaňt eřgenze</i>	<i>lomaňtneň aršemast</i>

### Exercise 10

*pango – přaso*  
*pilekst – pilese*



*e'gt' – kirgaso, kirgava  
sulgamo – meštese,  
kedkst – kedga,  
surks – surso, surkst – surga,  
kar't-prakstat, kem't – pilgse*

Exercise 11

*lemem, estonan, Tallinnse, sazorum, lemeze, Vengrijaso, sazorum, ijenze, ijesan, Vengrijav,  
Vengrijaš, sazorum, jarsan /jarsatano, lemeze, pi'ren'*

Exercise 13

Proverbs:

An empty stomach is the best cook.

What is learned is never forgotten.

Her hands are soft, but her nails are sharp. (She says one thing to your face and another thing behind your back).

## Unit 7

Exercise 1

*ež, eži'nek, ež't, eži't, eži'n, eži'de, eži'n, eži'nek, ež't, ež*

Exercise 2

*ež, a, avo'l, a, a, eži'nek*

Exercise 3

1f, 2g, 3d, 4c, 5b, 6a, 7e

Exercise 4

*Mon snardojak eži'n korta erža loma'n marto sonze kel'se. Tese kijak a eri. Mi'n kovgak teči a  
mol'tano. Si'n mežejak ež't rama ombo mastorsto. Mon kostojak a mujan šede paro tarka.  
Son kodamojak velev ež jaka.*

Exercise 5

*Ozak! Sak lej! Kunsolok! Sovak! Aš'tede-aš'tede! Šim'! Jarsado! Il'ado pe'le! Ažodo! Užo-užo!*

Exercise 11

*Ve'lese. 54/53/20/30/18. Eži'n. Me'lat. Er'avi. A pek. Jaki'n.*

Exercise 12

*lemem, lemeze, Štopa'niže, pa'taj, ijese, ve'le'nt, tarkaso, pre'vej't, Moskovsot, kavto'i'ne, lej'te'reš,  
mastorov, ve'lese, ejkakšonzo, kedse, Moskovsto*

## Unit 8

Exercise 1

*muškems, sevems, tonav'thems, sodams, večkems, maksoms, ramams, kandoms*

Exercise 4

*Son lovniže jovkstneň. Šormadsa šormaňt. Tejit' évíněň? Vikšnik panaroňt? Paňinek kšínť. Miň mariňek vajgeleňť. Nějija erkeňť.*

Exercise 5

*sodasak, sodasa, sodasi, tonavtněsink, kortams, večksiň, kortatano, moľems, čarkodeme, šormadoms*

Exercise 10

*peke, keď, keskav, prá, kudopotmo*

Exercise 15

*Studenttneň lamo évest – čit' siň jakit' lékcijava, šeminarga, čokšne kudosojak tonavtnít. Lamot jakit' tonavtněme érva-kodamo kelť. Kijak a sodi šnaroška studentneň jutkoškast. Vansiňek meže siň tejit' kizna, šnardo siň a jakit' uňiversítetev. Lamot molit' ombo mastorov, šeks siň tonavtnítkak lija kelť. Uliť studentt, konat kizna važodit'. Kizeň škasto studenttneň uli škast aštems kudoraškekt marto. Siň veise erit' velen' kudost, jakit' viřev, iněvedeň, lejeň čirěv. Šokšna, tunda sit' studenteň čitne – od lomaňtne vastovit' koncerteň škasto, sportoň zalso, jakit' nalkšeme, kišteme. Konat-konat ijeň peřť jakit' veise moramo.*

## Unit 9

Exercise 1

*šormadik /šormadink, lovník /lovník, morik /morink, sajemak, vanit' /vanink, kunsolomiž, ilink tapa, ilit' saje, ilit' /ilink stuvto*

Exercise 3

*moľemste, moľež; avardež, avarďemste; čijež, čijemste*

Exercise 4

Life makes even a blind man see.  
Don't rejoice when you find something, don't lament when you lose something.

Exercise 9

*Teťanzo-avanzo mazijněľt, ...  
Teťanzo-avanzo ašněľt, ...  
... son kšineňť saliže  
... son kapsta piřes kandiže*

Exercise 10

*tuš, tuje, tuš, moľš, moľe, moľš, uli, meleněk, uli*

Exercise 13

<i>kuldor-kaldor</i>	movement of a cart or buggy
<i>losk-losk</i>	throbbing, pulsation
<i>peť-peť</i>	dripping liquid

<i>kalck-kalck</i>	hitting, striking (wood)
<i>dubor-dubor</i>	stomping with feet
<i>nock-nock</i>	muscle twitching
<i>ćiv-ćiv</i>	warble, chirp, twitter
<i>šolk- šolk</i>	splash, lapping
<i>kaštor-kaštor</i>	rustle, murmur
<i>a kuš-a kaš</i>	silence
<i>zeří</i>	rumble, roar

*Krandazoš ardi – kuldor-kaldor. Praž lopatíne piłgeńek alo – kaštor-kaštor. Kudoš čavo – a kuš-a kaš. Narmoń mori – ćiv-ćiv. Alašatíne ardit – dubor-dubor. Vedeš čudi – šolk-šolk. Viř keřit – kalck-kalck.*

## Unit 10

### Exercise 2

*sovavliń – sovińderat teze /tozo  
 tujevliń – tujińderat tov; tija /tuva  
 jutavliń – jutińderat tov; tija /tuva  
 molevliń – molíńderat tov; tija /tuva  
 jakavliń – jakińderat tov; tija /tuva  
 aštevliń – aštińderat tese /toso  
 ojmsėvliń – ojmsińderat tese /toso*

### Exercise 3

*sińderaj simemat – kečeš onot koso, simt;  
 vačińderaj peket – panžakajíne onot kosot, jarsak;  
 sińderaj udomat – tarkaš acaž, ažo, madt;  
 šižińderajt piłget – ežemeš čavo, ozak, ojmsik;  
 ulińderaj melet – sovak klubs, toso sval eršit studentt;  
 jutińderaj udomat – sají kińiga, lovnok;  
 sovińderat viřs – ilak jomavto kińt;  
 piđińderat jam – ila puto lamo sal*

### Exercise 4

*tujińderatado, sińderajt, ulińderaj, sińderaj, vačińderaj, šižińderat, ulińderaj*

### Exercise 5

We used to go to the forest on Easter, to sing and talk there.  
 I looked through all the pictures.  
 The woman (mother) started to leave – she made the children do their homework (housework).  
 The guest was taken from house to house.  
 The little boy let the puppy into the house.  
 It was a holiday. We gathered together.  
 The lower part of the city is visible from the top of the mountain (hill). I showed the beautiful places.  
 The windows got cleaned, now let's rest a little.  
 My headscarf has disappeared (is missing). I lost my headscarf.

### Exercise 8

*a. – a víde, b. – a víde, c. – a víde, d. – a víde, e. – a víde, f. – víde, g. – víde, h. – víde, i. – víde,  
 j. – a víde*

## Exercise 10

### Conferences

There are regular student conferences on Finno-Ugric languages, held in a different place each year. The conference has been held in Saransk, too. As always, the conference was divided into different sections. There were talks concerning phonology, morphology, semantics, and sociolinguistics. Many people attended the section on written (in other words, literary) language. The literary language of Erzya, Moksha, and others is not very old, it was initiated in the 1920s. The famous Erzya linguists M. E. Jevsevjev and A. P. Rjabov helped greatly in the development of the Erzya written language. At the conference, people talked a lot about the history of these languages; there were a lot of questions about how to preserve one's language.

## Appendix III. Erzya-English Glossary

### A

*a* no, not, un-  
*a pińnej* cheap  
*a sodan, azdan* I don't know  
*acamo, -t, acamopeł, -í* coverings, bedsheets  
*acams* to cover, spread  
*ada, -do* Come, let's go! (*sg. /pl.*)  
*al* egg  
*alamo* little, few  
*alamo/do, -ška* a little  
*alga* beneath  
*alijams* to lay eggs  
*alk/a, -ińe* low  
*alks* basis, base  
*alo* under, lower  
*alo pe (kuro)* lower end of the village  
*altams* to promise  
*altavks* promise  
*Amerika, -ń* America, *-genitive*  
*ańdamo* man (*in folk poetry*)  
*andoms* to feed  
*angla, -ń* English, *-genitive*  
*anglań keł* English (language)  
*Anglija* England  
*anok* ready  
*anokstams* to prepare  
*anšak* only, but  
*apak (teje, soda)* un-(done, known); without  
 (doing, knowing)

*aparo* bad (not good)  
*arams* to occupy space, position, to become  
*aras, -í* (there) is /are not missing  
*aravtoms* to place, set  
*ardoms* to ride, drive  
*ardńems* to ride, drive (repeatedly)  
*aršema* thought, wish  
*aršems* to think, believe  
*art, -ovks* embroidery  
*artoma* painting  
*artoms* to paint  
*ašo, -ińe* white, *-diminutive*  
*ašogadoms* to become white  
*aštoms* to stand in place, hang out  
*ata* man; old man  
*atakš* cockerel  
*atamar* cherry  
*atavt* father-in-law  
*auditorija* auditorium  
*ava* woman, mother  
*ava-, teia-levks* child taken after his mother  
 /father  
*ava-loman* female person  
*avardems* to cry  
*avat-tejterí* mother and daughter  
*avavt* mother-in-law  
*avoł* no, not  
*ažo, -do* Go! (*sg. /pl.*)  
*azor, -ava* host, -ess

### B

*baba, -j* grandmother, *-vocative*  
*bajaga* (church) bell  
*balaga, čeca* flower  
*balčan* china  
*bańa, šlamo kudo* sauna  
*bašams, kortams* to converse, talk  
*baška* separate, apart  
*bazar* market square  
*bažams* to intend, want

*beřań, -ste* bad, badly  
*biblioteka, lovnoma kudo* library  
*bilet* ticket  
*blida* dish  
*boda, -j* grandfather, *-vocative*  
*buje* kin, tribe  
*buka* ox, bull  
*bus* bus  
*butra, -v* murky, dark, dirty

### Ć

*čanav* swallow (bird)  
*čarahman* hail  
*čeca* flower

*čerškova* church  
*četverk* Thursday  
*čidardoms* to bear, withstand

*ćildordoms* to glitter  
*ćilem* pipe  
*ćilem pej* wisdom tooth  
*ćipaka* chick  
*ćokov* nightingale

*ćolak (p'ra)* foolish (head)  
*ćora* man, boy  
*ćora-lomań* male person  
*ćorińe* small boy  
*ćotmar* bludgeon

## Č

*čačk* across  
*čačo, šačo* form, figure  
*čačoma, šačoma ije* birth year  
*čačoms, šačoms* to be born  
*čačtoms, šačtoms* to give birth to  
*čadived* flood water  
*čadoms* to boil over, flow  
*čakš, -ke* pot  
*čalgams* to step on  
*čama* face  
*čapaks* dough  
*čapamo* sour  
*čapamolovso* buttermilk, yogurt  
*čarams* to turn, revolve  
*čarij* wheel  
*čařkodema* understanding, comprehension  
*čařkodems* to understand  
*čařkodića* intelligent  
*čas* hour  
*čavo* empty  
*čavolgadoms* to become empty  
*čavoms* to hit  
*čejeř* mouse  
*čemeń* rust  
*čeř, -t* hair  
*čeřbulo (-pulo)* pigtail  
*čevće* soft  
*či* day, sun  
*čijams* to propose (marriage)  
*čijems* to run

*čilišema* sunrise, east  
*čiń karšo* against/in front of the sun  
*čińe* odour, smell  
*(či/ń, -nze) čop* the entire day  
*čir* curved, skewed  
*čirė, -se* bank/edge, on the bank  
*čiste* every day  
*čit* in the daytime  
*čivaldo* daylight  
*čivalgoma* sunset, west  
*čokšńe* evening  
*čopoda, topoda* dark  
*čopodasto* in the dark, at a dark time  
*čov/a, -ińe* thin, fine, weak, -diminutive  
*čovalat* pearls  
*čovar* mortar  
*čovor* together  
*čožda, šožda* light, easy  
*čudems* to pour, flow  
*čuđi ved* flowing water  
*čudikerks* stream  
*čumo* reason  
*čumondoms* to blame  
*čumovtomo* innocent  
*čuřka* onion  
*čuro* rare  
*čurosto* rarely  
*čuvoms* to dig  
*čuvto* tree, wood (material)

## D

*davol* storm  
*di* and  
*doktor* doctor  
*dokument* document, paper, bill

*domka* deep  
*došova, a pitńej* cheap  
*dubor-dubor* sound of feet trampling  
*dušman* enemy, foe

## E

*ečke* thick  
*ej* ice  
*ejde* infant  
*ejkakš* child

*ejkakšči* childhood  
*ej/s, -se, -ste* into, in, from inside  
*ejžuro (-šuro)* icicle (-horn)  
*ekše* cool

*ekšĕlams* to bathe  
*ĕle* lap  
*emež* vegetable  
*emežpirĕ* vegetable garden  
*eňaldo/ms, -ma* to ask, request  
*eno* well, so  
*eř* so  
*eřamo* life  
*eřams* to live  
*eřaza* lively, healthy, vivid  
*eřavi, -t* must, is necessary  
*eřavoms* to be needed/necessary  
*eřge, eřg'* pearl, pearls  
*eřiĕa* inhabitant  
*eřke* lake  
*eřšems* to happen

*erza, -ň* Erzya, Erzyan  
*eržava* Erzyan woman  
*eřva* each, every  
*eřva ĕiste* every day  
*eřva koso* everywhere  
*eřva mež/e, -t* everything  
*eske* nail  
*eš* own  
*eston, -oň* Estonian, -*genitive*  
*Estoňija* Estonia  
*ež* no (*past negation*)  
*ežem* bench  
*ezga* along, by  
*eždems* to warm  
*ežems* to warm up (*v.i.*)  
*Evropa, -ň* Europe, -an

## F

*fakul'et* faculty  
*filma* film  
*Finlandija* Finland  
*finn, -eň* Finnish, -*genitive*  
*folklor* folklore

*fontan* fountain  
*foto* photo  
*Franĕija* France  
*francuz, -oň* French, -*genitive*

## G

*gajgems* to clang, jingle  
*gajt* noise, sounds  
*-gak, -jak, -kak* too, also  
*gala, giga, diga* goose

*gažet* magazine  
*Germaňija* Germany  
*gorňipov* buttercup, water lily  
*guj, kuj* snake

## I

*iđem rakša* wild animal  
*iđemevs* evil spirit  
*iđemka* wild bird (duck)  
*iđems* to free, save, rescue  
*ije* year  
*ikele* earlier, in front of/before  
*ikelks* front part  
*iĕa, -do* don't! (*sg. /pl.*)  
*iĕov* birch, twig  
*iĕtams* to escort  
*iĕvede/ms, -vks* to be lost, being lost  
*imbiĕav* butterfly  
*iňazor* czar, emperor  
*iňeĕi* Easter

*iňeved* sea, ocean  
*iňfo-lopa* fact sheet  
*iňzej* raspberry  
*iňže* guest  
*iňžeň kudo* guest house  
*iřdeks* rib  
*iředems* to get drunk  
*iřak* yesterday  
*iřakoň, iřeň* yesterday (*genitive*)  
*iřta* so, thus  
*iřtamo* this/that kind of  
*ižams* to harrow  
*ižňams* to win  
*Italija* Italy

## J

*ja* well; oh  
*jakams* to go, visit  
*jakavtoms* to make (someone) go, visit  
*jakstéře* red  
*jakšamo* cold, frost  
*jala* still, continually  
*jalaks* younger brother  
*jalaíteke* however, nevertheless  
*jalga* friend  
*jalgaksči* friendship  
*jalgo* on foot  
*jam* soup  
*jan* path  
*jarmak* money  
*jarmunka* marketplace  
*jarsamopelí* food, something to eat  
*jarsams* to eat  
*jažams* to grind, break  
*javoms* to split  
*jolgaña* scrawny, slender

*jomavtoms (ju-)* to lose  
*jon* line, side  
*jon* dexterous, bold  
*jonov* to the side  
*jondol (-tol)* lightning (fire)  
*jorams* to prepare  
*jorok, (-či)* skill, ability  
*jortoms* to throw  
*jožo* feeling  
*jožov* clever, sneaky  
*jovks* fairy-tale  
*jovtams* to say  
*jovtñems* to tell  
*jukšems* to release, open, let go  
*jumavtoms, jomavtoms* to lose  
*jur* root  
*jutams (vakska)* to pass by  
*jutko* gap  
*jutkoška* free time  
*jutkso* amongst, amidst

## K

*kačamo* smoke  
*kadoms* to leave  
*kafedra* chair, (sub)department  
*kajams* to pour (water)  
*kajams* to take off, take away  
*kajga* zither, kantele  
*kal* fish  
*kaladoms* to wear off, decay  
*kalavtoms* to demolish, tear down  
*kalgodo* tough, hard  
*kalmams* to bury  
*kalmo* grave  
*kalmolango* graveyard  
*kaña* (oh) really  
*kandoms* to carry  
*kañívetka* sweet  
*kapšams* to hurry  
*kardams* to forbid, stop  
*kardaz* (court)yard  
*kardo* barn  
*kařel* Karelian  
*Kařelíja* Karelia  
*kargo* crane  
*karks* belt  
*karmams* to begin  
*kařsemapelí* footwear, shoes  
*kařsems* to wear on the feet  
*karšo* against, opposite  
*karšo val* objection

*kaří-prakstat* footwear  
*karvo, karuv* fly  
*kasoms* to grow (v.i.)  
*kastoms* to grow (v.t.)  
*kaša* porridge  
*kaštaz* wreath  
*kaštom(o)* oven  
*kažems* to give as a gift  
*kažne* gift, present  
*kažo* calamity  
*katka* cat  
*kavañams* to treat  
*kavkso* eight  
*kavto* two  
*kavtoldoms* to hesitate, waver  
*kečams* to rejoice, gladden  
*keče* ladle, dipper  
*keđ* hand; skin  
*keđks* bracelet  
*kekšems* to hide  
*keľ* language, tongue  
*keľa* supposedly  
*kele* width  
*kelej* wide  
*kelejgadoms* to widen  
*kelme* cold  
*kelmems* to freeze  
*kem, -í* boot, boots  
*kemema* belief



*kemems* to believe  
*kemeń* ten  
*keńardoms* to rejoice, gladden  
*keńarks* joy, gladness  
*keńeře* elbow  
*keńeřems* to ripen, reach (a condition)  
*kenkš* one  
*kenže* (finger)nail  
*kepedems* to lift  
*kepe-štapo* barefoot, naked  
*keř* tree bark  
*keřams* to cut, chop  
*keřks* ball of yarn  
*kerš* (*peń*) left (side)  
*keskav* bag  
*kezeř* czar  
*kezeřeń škańe*, *-sto* in the old times  
*kež*, *-ej* anger, angry  
*kev* stone  
*kevksťema* question  
*kevksťems* to ask  
*ki* path, road  
*ki lang/o*, *-so* the way/road, on the way/road  
*kijak* someone /anyone /no-one  
*kijaks* floor  
*kije* who  
*kilej* birch  
*kiń* whose  
*kińiga* book  
*kirda* once, time  
*kirdems* to keep  
*kiře* ball of yarn  
*kirga* neck  
*kirgapař* throat  
*kirvažems* to catch fire  
*kise* for  
*kiska* dog  
*kišťema* dance  
*kišťems* to dance  
*kize* summer  
*kizna* in summer  
*klub* club  
*kočkams* to choose, collect  
*koct* fabric  
*koda* how  
*kodajak* somehow/anyhow/in no way  
*kodamo* what kind  
*kodamo* knitting  
*kodams* to knit  
*kofija* coffee  
*koj*, *-se* custom; according to  
*koj-kona* some  
*kojme* shovel  
*koj-meže* something  
*kolams* to ruin, break  
*kolmo* three

*kolmońgemeń* thirty  
*komoro* handful  
*komś* twenty  
*kona* which  
*końa* forehead  
*konaškak* some (of them)  
*końdamo* like, similar  
*końov* document, paper, bill  
*kopoř* back  
*kor* character, personality  
*kořas* according to  
*kortams*, *bařams* to speak  
*kortavks* dialect  
*koške* dry  
*koškems* to dry up  
*koso* where  
*kosojak* somewhere /anywhere /nowhere  
*kostojak* from somewhere /anywhere /nowhere  
*kostoń* from where  
*košt* air, steam  
*koža* rich  
*kozo* where to  
*kozojak* to somewhere, to nowhere  
*kozoma* cough  
*kozoms* to cough  
*kota* shoe  
*koto* six  
*kov* moon, month  
*kov* to where  
*kovgak* somewhere, nowhere  
*kovol* cloud  
*krandaz*, *karandaz* cart  
*kravtoms* to drive away, stave off  
*ksnav* pea  
*kstij*, *kistij* strawberry  
*kši* bread  
*kšna*, *kšnań* karks strap  
*(k)šnams* to praise, thank  
*kšńi* iron  
*kučoms* to send (a letter)  
*kudazor*, *-ava* landlord, -lady  
*kudikelks* entryway  
*kudo* home, house  
*kudopotmo* interior of a building  
*kudoraške* family  
*kujar* cucumber  
*kuloms* to die  
*kulov* ash  
*kuma(n)ža* knee  
*kundams* to capture, seize  
*kunsoloms* to listen  
*kunška* middle, centre  
*kurgo* mouth  
*kurgo meńeń* palate  
*kuro* street  
*kurok*, *-sto* quick, -ly

*kuz* spruce  
*kužems* to go up  
*kužo* square, lea, clearing  
*kutmordavks* hug  
*kutmořams* to hug, embrace  
*kuva* where (along /through what/)

*kuvajak* somewhere, anywhere, nowhere  
*kuvaka* long  
*kuva-kuva* in some places  
*kuvalt* because of, through, along  
*kuvat*, -s for a long time

## L Ĺ

*lajšems* to grieve  
*lakams* to boil (v.i.)  
*lambamo* sweet  
*lamo* a lot  
*lamoči* multitude  
*lamokšt* many times  
*lamoňest* many people together, amongst  
 themselves  
*langa* off of, from  
*lang/s*, -so on to, on  
*laz* plank  
*laznoms* (*pengí*) to chop wood  
*lazoms* to split, break  
*latiž* Latvian  
*Latvija* Latvia  
*lavš* cradle  
*lavšo* weak  
*lavtov*, -t shoulder, -s  
*ľadems* to shoot; to mow  
*lej* river  
*lekčija* lecture  
*lekšems* to breathe  
*leľa* older brother; uncle  
*leľat-sazort* brother and sister  
*lem* name  
*lembe* warm  
*lemđems*, *putoms lem* to name, denominate  
*lepe* alder  
*leťke* damp

*leťke tarka* swamp, bog  
*levks* young animal; child  
*lezdams* to help  
*leze* help  
*lezk*s means of help  
*ľija* other  
*ľijakstomoms* to change (v.i.)  
*ľijanaz* linen  
*lišems* to exit, go out  
*lišems mirđeňeň* to get married (to go to a  
 man)  
*lišma* well  
*lišmapřa* source, spring, well  
*lišme*, *alaša* horse  
*ľitov* Lithuanian  
*Ĺitya* Lithuania  
*ľivtams* to fly  
*lomaň* person  
*ľomžor* bird cherry  
*lopa* leaf  
*lotkams* to stop, end, cease (v.i.)  
*lov*, -ov snow, -y  
*lovnoma* reading  
*lovnomakudo* library  
*lovnomapeľ* something to read  
*lovnoms* to read  
*lovoms* to read, count  
*lovso* milk  
*luv* custom, order

## M

*mađems* to lie down, go to sleep  
*mađstems* to switch off, put to bed, delete  
*makso* liver  
*maksoms* to give  
*maksoms val* to promise, give one's word  
*malaso*, -v close/near, (to) close/near  
*maňams* to deceive  
*maňej* clear (day)  
*maniť* in previous years  
*mar* hill  
*mařams* to hear  
*mařavoms* to be heard, felt, to seem

*maři keľ* Mari language  
*marto* with  
*mastor* land, country  
*mastorlango* world  
*mašina* car  
*maštoms* to know, be able to; to kill, end  
*maštovoms* to be suitable, appropriate, to befit;  
 to be killed  
*maziči* beauty  
*mazij* beautiful  
*mazijka* decoration, picture  
*mazilgavtoms* to beautify

*mátedévems* to doze, slumber  
*međ* honey  
*mejelíce* last, most recent  
*mejelks* next  
*mejle* after, later  
*mekev* back, again  
*mekevlank* the other way around, on the  
 contrary  
*mekev-vasov* back and forth  
*meks* why  
*mekskak* for some reason  
*mekš* bee  
*meł* mind  
*meł vitem*s to raise one's spirits  
*mełat* last year  
*mełavks* worry  
*mełavtoms* to worry  
*mełga* after, following (spatial)  
*mełmołema* boredom, longing  
*mełs íedems* to come to mind, be remembered  
*mełs tujems* to please, appeal to  
*mełsparo* joy, contentment  
*meńčems* to bend, twist  
*meńdams* to bend  
*meńel* sky  
*meńelks* air  
*meńems* to escape  
*meřems* to say  
*mešte* chest

*meže* what  
*mežejak* something, anything, nothing  
*mežeks* what for  
*mežekskak* for something/anything/nothing  
*mijems* to sell  
*mik* even  
*mikšniča* seller, trader  
*miń* we  
*mińek* our  
*mińs* we (ourselves)  
*miřde* man, husband  
*moda* land, earth  
*modamař* potato  
*mokšava* Mokshan woman  
*mokšo, -ń (keł)* Mokshan (language)  
*mołems* to go  
*mon* I  
*moń* my, mine  
*mons* I (myself)  
*moramo* singing  
*morams* to sing  
*moriča* singer  
*moro* song  
*moršekšńems* to sing (repeatedly)  
*Moskov* Moscow  
*mujems* to find  
*muškems* to do laundry  
*muzika, śedamo* music

## N Ń

*načko* wet, damp  
*načko tarka* swamp, bog  
*načkoms* to get wet  
*najman* marketplace, fair  
*ńaka* doll  
*naksado* rotten  
*nal* arrow  
*nalksems* to play  
*nalkstams* to get bored  
*nalkške* toy  
*narams* to shave  
*nardamo* towel  
*nardams* to dry  
*narmuń, -o-* bird  
*navams* to dip (into water)  
*navolo* slippery  
*ńe, (-ńie)* these  
*ńed* handle, stem  
*ńedła* week  
*ńedłači* Sunday  
*ńej* now

*ńejemazonok!* Goodbye! See you (*liter.*  
 us) later!  
*ńejems* to see  
*ńemeć* German  
*ńeške* beehive  
*ńeške-piře* apiary  
*ńeže* support  
*ńežedems* to support  
*ńetks* stem (of a plant)  
*ńevtęma* exhibition, show  
*ńevtęms* to show  
*ńi* wife, woman  
*ńiksęms* to smell, huff  
*ńiłe* four  
*ńiłęms* to swallow  
*ńimiłav* butterfly  
*nolams* to lick  
*nolaža* slippery (road)  
*noldams* to let go, free  
*nolgař, nolgo tulo* snot-nosed  
*nolgo* snot  
*ńorov* fertile, fruitful

*norovava* goddess of fertility  
*nućka* grandchild  
*nuđej* reed pipe  
*nujems* to reap  
*nula* rag, tatter  
*numolo* hare, rabbit  
*nupoń* moss

*nuńamo* swing  
*nuńams* to swing  
*nurdo* sleigh  
*nuńk/a, -ińe* short  
*nurńams* to pour (into a glass)  
*nusmańa* sad, grey, bleak, dreary (day)  
*nużaks, -ći* lazy, -ness

## O

*obeżgan* monkey  
*od* new, young  
*odar* udder  
*odava* stepmother  
*ođirva* bride  
*odksći* youth  
*odov* again  
*ods* again, in a different way  
*odsto* when young  
*oj* butter  
*ojmams* to rest, calm down  
*ojme* soul, breath  
*ojmśems* to rest  
*okojńiki* at last  
*olgo* straw  
*ombo* other  
*ombo mastor* foreign country  
*omboće* second  
*on* dream  
*ongoms* to bark  
*onks* measure, weight  
*onkstams* to measure, weigh

*onsto-* (+possessive genitive) in a / one's  
dream  
*opańa* close air  
*orgat* yeast  
*orgodems* to flee, escape  
*orma* sickness, illness  
*ormalgadoms* to fall ill  
*ormameńks* medicine  
*orśamo(-peń)* clothing  
*orśams* to wear  
*oś* town, city  
*ozado* sitting  
*ozams* to sit  
*ożaz* sparrow  
*ożks* worship, devotion  
*oznoms* to worship  
*oża* sleeve  
*ožo* yellow  
*otel* (*inżeń kudo*) hotel, guesthouse  
*ovto* bear  
*ovtońevks* bear cub  
*ovtorńik* Tuesday  
*ovtumań* brier, dog-rose

## P

*paća* towel  
*paćińe* handkerchief  
*pačk* through; always  
*pačkodems* to arrive  
*paćńams val* to notify  
*pakśa* field  
*pal* piece  
*palams* to kiss  
*paloms* to burn (v.i.)  
*panar* shirt, tunic  
*pando* mountain, hill  
*pandoms* to pay; to patch  
*pandoms val* to respond, answer (*liter.* pay a  
word)  
*pańems* to drive away, stave off  
*pańems kši* to bake bread  
*pango* bonnet

*pango* mushroom  
*panżado* open  
*panżakaj* pie, pizza  
*panžo/ms, -ź* to open, -ed  
*pańak* hopefully, maybe  
*parija* husband's sister  
*paro meńse* gladly, with pleasure  
*Paro od ije!* Happy New Year!  
*Paro Roštova!* Merry Christmas!  
*par/o, -ińe* good, -diminutive  
*paroći* goodness  
*parolgadoms* to get better  
*parosto* well  
*parśej* silk  
*paz* god  
*pazava* goddess  
*paća* older sister, aunt

*paťat-jalakst* older sister and younger brother  
*pe* end  
*peća* Friday  
*pečkems* (*kši, sivel*) to cut (bread, meat)  
*pej* tooth  
*pejdems* to laugh  
*pejel* knife  
*pek* very  
*peke* stomach  
*peľ; -peľ* side, half  
*peľems* to fear  
*peľems* to bore, drill  
*peľev* to the side  
*peľeve* midnight  
*peľka* thumb  
*peľks* part  
*penč* spoon  
*peňer'va* youngest son's wife  
*penšija* pension  
*peřka* around  
*peří* through  
*peří-peľks* nature, surroundings  
*peškše* full  
*pešte* nut  
*pezems pća* to wash the head; to scold  
*pežet* sin  
*pet-peť* the sound of water dripping  
*pevteme* endless  
*piče* pine  
*pičkams* to get better, recover  
*pidems (jam)* to cook, boil (soup)  
*pijems* to boil, ripen  
*piks* rope  
*pile* ear  
*pilekst* earrings  
*pilge* leg, foot  
*piňe* dog  
*pinge* lifetime, century  
*pirams* to restrict, bar  
*piravks* garden, fence  
*pire* garden, fence  
*pize* nest  
*pižeme* rain  
*pižems* to rain  
*pižol* rowan

*piže* green  
*pižňems* to shout, scream  
*piňe* price  
*piňej* expensive  
*pojezd* train  
*pokš, -ke* big  
*pokš-čarij* ferris wheel  
*pokš či* holiday, celebration  
*pokštat-babat* grandfather and -mother  
*pona* wool; strain, fibre  
*ponasuře* woollen yarn, worsted  
*poňdelňnik* Monday  
*pondo* (old unit of mass, 16 kg)  
*pořems* to chew, eat  
*porksams* to crush  
*potmo* the inside  
*pot(mo)s* into  
*pot(mo)so* inside  
*pot(mo)sto* from inside  
*potmova* along the inside  
*potavtoms (skal)* to milk (a cow)  
*pća, pića* head  
*přadoms* to end (*v.t.*)  
*přaka* patty  
*prams* to drop, fall  
*přavt* boss, leader  
*přev(ť)* brain, sense  
*převěj* wise  
*převějči* wisdom  
*převějka* clever Dick  
*při* hot  
*přškadems* to bid, express  
*pulaj* back-apron  
*pulo* tail  
*purdams* to turn  
*puře* kvass, mead  
*purgiňe* thunder, rumble  
*purnams* to gather  
*purnavoms* to gather (*v.i.*)  
*puromoms* to assemble, gather (*v.i.*)  
*pursoz* piglet  
*putoms (vejs)* to put (together)  
*putoms či* to set a date  
*putoms emeži* to plant vegetables  
*putoms ľem* to name, denominate

## R Ř

*rakams* to laugh  
*rakša* animal  
*ramams* to buy  
*rangoms* to shout, scream  
*raške* people  
*raštams* to multiply, grow in numbers

*raužo* black  
*Rav* Volga  
*ředams* to notice  
*řestams* to fry  
*řeve* sheep  
*řišme* chain

*řizks* concern, pain  
*řiznems* to worry  
*řivež* fox  
*Roštova* Christmas  
*rož* rye  
*ruća* robe, gown

*rudaz* dirt, mud  
*rungo* chest, body  
*ruz* Russian  
*ruzava* Russian woman  
*Ruzoň mastor* Russia

## S Š Ť

*šado* hundred  
*sajems* to take, get, receive  
*sal* salt  
*salams* to steal  
*salava* in secret  
*salmuks* needle  
*salov* salty  
*sams* to come  
*san* vein  
*sapoň* soap  
*Saran (oš)* Saransk  
*saraz* chicken  
*sasams* to gain, catch up  
*sastiňeste* slowly, steadily  
*sasto* slowly  
*šatko* spark  
*satoms* to suffice  
*satoška* sufficiently  
*sazor* (younger) sister  
*še* it, that  
*seď* bridge  
*šedams* to play an instrument  
*šedamo, muzika* music  
*šedej* heart  
*šeh(-ie)* the most  
*šejede* dense  
*šejedste* often  
*šejeľ* hedgehog  
*šeks* this is why, (because)  
*šelge* saliva, spit  
*šelgams* to spit  
*šelme* eye  
*šelmukšt* eyeglasses  
*šelved* tear drop  
*seme* brush  
*seň* blue  
*sepe* gall  
*sepej* bitter  
*seř* height  
*seřa* acorn  
*šeřada* Wednesday  
*seřej* tall  
*šeřka* shin  
*šeske* at once  
*šeške* mosquito

*šeste* then  
*šezems* to tear, rip  
*sezems* to delay  
*seťme* quiet, peaceful  
*šeťne* those (it, that, plural)  
*sevems* to eat up  
*si ijeste* next year  
*sij* rotten  
*šija* silver  
*šimems* to drink  
*siň* they  
*siňš* they (themselves)  
*siře* old  
*siředems* to grow old  
*sirňe* gold  
*šišem* seven  
*šižems* to become tired  
*sivel* meat  
*skal* cow  
*škamo(-m, possessive)* alone  
*šňardo, žardo* when  
*šňardo-šňardo* sometimes  
*šňarija, žarija* some, quite a lot  
*šňaro, žaro* how much  
*šňars, žars* how long, until when  
*sodamojovks* riddle  
*sodams* to know  
*sodaviks* familiar, famous  
*sodaž* familiar, known  
*sodoms* to bind, tie  
*sokor* blind  
*soks* ski  
*šokš* autumn  
*šokšňa* in autumn  
*solams* to melt  
*šolgoms* to close  
*šolmo* wing  
*son* he/she  
*soňš* he/she (him-/herself)  
*šorma* letter  
*šormadoms* to write  
*šormav* mottled, patterned  
*sovams* to enter  
*sovoň* clay  
*štado* standing  
*staka* hard, difficult

*stakasto* with difficulty  
*stamo* sewing  
*stams* to sew  
*śtams* to get up  
*student* student  
*stuvtoms* to forget  
*subuta* Saturday  
*sudo* nose  
*śudoms* to curse  
*sudřams* to comb  
*śukoňams* to bow, greet  
*śukoro* bun  
*śuk-pra* bow, thank you  
*suks* worm, maggot  
*śulej* shadow  
*śulgamo* brooch  
*sulika* glass, bottle  
*śulmams* to bind, tie  
*śulmavks, śulmo* side  
*śulmo* knot  
*śuńderks* dusk  
*śupav* rich  
*sur* finger

*surbrá* fingertip  
*suře* yarn  
*surks* ring  
*śuro* horn  
*surśeme* comb  
*suskoms* to bite  
*suv* fog, mist  
*sval* always  
*śabra* neighbour  
*śačo* form, figure  
*śačoms* to be born  
*śačtoms* to give birth to  
*śka* time  
*śkastonzo* at the right time  
*śłams* to wash  
*śłams-nardams* to clean  
*śołk-śołk* the sound of water lapping  
*śožda* light, easy  
*śukštorov* currant  
*śumbra* healthy  
*śumbrači* health  
*Śvedćija* Sweden  
*śved* Swede

## T T'

*tago* again  
*tago-śardo* sometime, once  
*ta-kodamo* a kind of  
*tandadoms* to be startled  
*tańtej, -ste* tasty; tastily  
*tapams* to crush, trample  
*tarad* branch  
*targo* week  
*tarka* place  
*tarvaz* sickle  
*taštams* to store, conserve  
*tašto* old, worn-out  
*te* this  
*teči* today  
*tedede* this year  
*tej* to here, hither  
*tejems* to do  
*tejter, -ka* girl, daughter  
*tej-tov* here and there  
*teke* same  
*tele* winter  
*telňa* in winter  
*teřdems* to invite  
*tese* here  
*teste* from here  
*tešks* sign  
*tešte* star  
*teřat-ćorat* father and son  
*tev* work

*ťija-tuva* here and there  
*ťikše* grass, hay  
*tiń* you (*pl.*)  
*tińś* you (yourselves)  
*todov* pillow  
*ťokš* tip, treetop  
*tol* fire  
*tolbańda (panda* 'plant bed') log fire  
*tolga* feather  
*tombams* to hit, injure  
*ton* you (*sg.*)  
*tonadoms* to get used/accustomed to  
*tonavńems* to learn  
*tonavtoms* to teach  
*tońś* you (yourself)  
*topo* cottage cheese  
*toso* there  
*tožeń, tišća* thousand  
*tov* to there, thither  
*tovźuro* wheat  
*trams, tirams* to raise (a child)  
*tujems* to leave  
*tumo* oak  
*tunda* in spring  
*tundo* spring  
*tuřems* to fight, battle  
*turva* lip  
*tus* colour, appearance

*túža* brown  
*tuva* through there

*tuvo* pig  
*tuvtal* reason, cause

## U

*učoms* to wait  
*udalce* rear, hind (*adj.*)  
*udalo*, -v behind  
*udem* brain  
*udoma tarka* sleeping place  
*udoms* to sleep  
*ujems* to swim  
*ukštor* maple  
*ulča* street  
*ulema(-t)* maybe, presumably  
*ulems* to be  
*uli-paro* fortune  
*umař* apple  
*umok*, -oň long ago, way back, ancient  
*uñiveršitet* university

*ur* squirrel  
*uráž* sister-in-law  
*urē* slave  
*uroz* orphan  
*urva* daughter-in-law  
*urvaksto/ms*, -ž to get married (to take a wife),  
married  
*urvine* youngest son's wife  
*ušija* island  
*uskoms* to bring, pull  
*ušo* air, outside  
*ušodoms* to begin  
*uštoms* to heat  
*užere* axe  
*užo*, -do! Wait! (*sg. /pl.*)

## V

*vačkams* to stack, place, put in order, pile  
*vačočī* hunger  
*vačodo* hungry  
*vačoms* to be hungry  
*vadems (ojse)* to slather (butter)  
*vadrá*, *paro* good  
*vadrálgavtoms*  
*vadrásto*, *parosto* well  
*vaj* oh  
*vajams* to sink, drown  
*vajgeľ* voice  
*vajgeľbe (-pe)* kilometre, verst (*liter.* voice  
end)  
*vakan* bowl, pelvis  
*vaks* span (old unit of length, 12 to 23cm)  
*vakska* past  
*vakss* to the side  
*vakssó* beside  
*val* word  
*valaňa* smooth  
*valdo* light; light, bright  
*valdo-seň* light blue  
*valdomoms* to become light  
*valgoms* to land, come down  
*valks* dictionary  
*valma* window, vitrine  
*valmeřevks* proverb  
*valoms* to spill, pour  
*valnoms* to water  
*valske (marto)* morning, in the morning  
*vana* look here

*vaňks* clean  
*vaňskavtoms* to clean  
*vannoms* to inspect, look through  
*vanoms* to look, watch  
*vanoms meľ* to respect, hold in regard  
*vanovks* look, outlook  
*vanstoms* to protect, guard  
*vanta!* Look!  
*vara* hole  
*varaka* crow  
*varčams* to try  
*varga* mitten, glove  
*varma* wind  
*varsodems* to cast, push vehemently  
*varštams* to take a glance at  
*vašeňce* first  
*vašňa* in the beginning, at first  
*vasolbaba* maternal grandmother  
*vasolo*, -v far  
*vasonbejěť (-p-)* scissors  
*vastoma* meeting  
*vastamazonok!* Until we meet! Good-bye!  
*vasto/ms*, -ma to meet, meeting  
*vašo* fawn  
*vaz* calf  
*važo* worker  
*važodems* to work  
*vatkams* to peel  
*vatrakš* frog  
*ve* night



*ve(jke) meľse* unanimously  
*večkema* love  
*večkems* to love  
*večkEViks* dear, darling  
*veď* water  
*veďava* mermaid, water-nymph  
*veďev (-kev)* mill (*liter.* water stone)  
*vedme* tie, rope, lead  
*vejke* one  
*vejkeľ* equal, alike  
*vejkse* nine  
*vejse* together  
*velams* to go round, rotate  
*velavtoms* to turn, return  
*velde* via, by,  
*veľe* village  
*velks* cream (of milk)  
*velks/ka, -se* across, above  
*velmems* to recover, come to life, awake  
*veltams* to cover  
*veltamo, -peľ* cover, blanket  
*veluv* together, jointly  
*venč* boat  
*vengra* Hungarian  
*Vengřija* Hungary  
*veňštams* to stretch, hold out  
*vepeľe* at a distance  
*veř* blood  
*veře pe* upper end (of the village)  
*veřek* raw, not ripe  
*veřev* up  
*veřga* up, high  
  
*veřgiz* wolf  
*veřks* upper part, top

*veše* all  
*vešemeze* everything /everyone together  
*vešľ* once  
*vešľkak* not once, never  
*vešems* to ask, require  
*veškems* to whistle  
*vešňems* to look/search for  
*veženče* younger  
*veť* at night  
*vetams* to pull  
*vetams přa* to behave  
*veťe* five  
*veťiča* leader, guide  
*veťke* Chuvash  
*vide* true, right  
*videčľ* truth  
*vide-paro* exactly like, as  
*videms* to seed, sow  
*vidme* seed  
*vids* until  
*vidste* straight  
*vij* strength, force  
*vijev, -ste* strong, -ly  
*vikšňems* to crochet, embroider  
*vikšňevks* embroidery  
*viř* forest  
*viřez* lamb  
*viška, višľne, višľiňe* small  
*viždems* to feel ashamed  
*vižks, -š-* shame  
*viť (peľ)* right (side)  
*viťems* to fix  
*viťev, viť peľev* to the right  
*viťkstams* to confess

## Z Ž

*zal* hall  
*zeme* force, essence, substance  
*žepe* pocket  
*zeřľ* rumble

*zijan* accident, mishap  
*zijňems* to drone, whine  
*žojňems* babble, sound

## Appendix IV. English-Erzya Glossary

### A

ability, skill <i>gorok</i> , -či	amongst, amidst <i>jutkso</i>
able <i>gorokov</i>	ancient <i>umokoń</i>
to be able to <i>maštoms</i>	and <i>di</i>
absent, missing, not (sg, pl) <i>araś</i> , -í	anger, angry <i>kež</i> , -ej
accident, mishap <i>zijan</i>	animal <i>rakša</i>
according to <i>końas</i>	to answer, respond <i>pandoms val</i>
acorn <i>seńa</i>	anyhow <i>kodajak</i>
across <i>čačk</i>	anyone <i>kijak</i>
to address, bid <i>pškadems</i>	anything <i>mežejak</i>
after, following (spatial) <i>meńga</i>	anywhere <i>kosojak</i> , <i>kuvajak</i>
after, later <i>mejle</i>	apart <i>baška</i>
again <i>odov</i> , <i>tago</i>	apiary <i>ńeške-pińe</i>
again, in a different way <i>ods</i>	to appeal to <i>meńs tujems</i>
against, opposite <i>karšo</i>	appearance, colour <i>tus</i>
against/in front of the sun <i>čiń karšo</i>	apple <i>umań</i>
air <i>meńelks</i>	around <i>peńka</i>
air, outside <i>ušo</i>	to arrive <i>sams</i> , <i>pačkodems</i>
air, steam <i>košt</i>	arrow <i>nal</i>
alder <i>lepe</i>	ash <i>kulov</i>
alike <i>vejket</i>	to ask <i>kevksťems</i> , <i>vešems</i> , <i>eńaldoms</i>
all <i>veše</i>	to assemble <i>puromoms</i>
(I) alone <i>škamo(-m, possessive)</i>	auditorium <i>auditońija</i>
along the inside <i>potmova</i>	aunt, elder sister <i>pata</i>
along, by <i>ezga</i>	autumn <i>šokś</i>
also, too - <i>gak</i> , - <i>jak</i> , - <i>kak</i>	to awake <i>sińgožems</i> , <i>veńmems</i>
always <i>sval</i>	axe <i>užeńe</i>
America, - <i>genitive Ameńika</i> , -ń	

### B

to babble, sound <i>žońnems</i>	to be <i>uńems</i>
back (body part) <i>kopoń</i>	bear <i>ovto</i>
back and forth <i>mekev-vasov</i>	to bear <i>čidardoms</i>
back, again <i>mekev</i>	bear cub <i>ovtońevks</i>
back (thigh) cover, apron ( <i>ethnographic</i> ) <i>pulaj</i>	beautiful <i>mazij</i>
bad (not good) <i>aparo</i>	beauty <i>maziči</i>
bad, badly <i>beńań</i> , - <i>ste</i>	to beautify <i>mazilgavtoms</i>
bag <i>keskav</i>	because, that's why <i>śeks</i>
to bake bread <i>pańems kši</i>	because of, through, along <i>kuvalt</i>
ball of yarn <i>keńks</i> , <i>kińe</i>	to become <i>arams</i>
bank/edge, on the bank <i>čińe</i> , - <i>se</i>	to become drunk <i>ińedems</i>
to bar <i>pińams</i>	to become empty <i>čavolgadoms</i> , <i>čamoms</i>
barefoot, naked <i>kepe-štapo</i>	to become light <i>valdomoms</i>
to bark <i>ongoms</i>	to become tired <i>šižems</i>
barn <i>kardo</i>	to become white <i>ašolgadoms</i>
basis, base <i>alks</i>	to go to bed <i>madems</i>
to bathe <i>ekšelams</i>	bedsheets, coverings <i>acamo</i> , - <i>t</i>
to battle <i>túńems</i>	bee <i>mekś</i>

to benefit *maštovoms*  
 before *ikele*  
 to begin *karmams, ušodoms*  
 to behave *vetams prá*  
 behind *udalo, -v*  
 beehive *neške*  
 belief *kemema*  
 to believe *kemems*  
 belt *karks*  
 bench *ežem*  
 to bend *meñčems, meñdams*  
 beneath *alga*  
 beside *vaksso*  
 big *pokš, -ke*  
 big wheel *pokš-čarij*  
 to bid *pškadems*  
 bill *document, koňov*  
 to bind *sodoms, šulmams*  
 birch (tree) *kilej*  
 birch, twig *ilov*  
 bird *narmuň, -o-*  
 bird cherry *lomžor*  
 birth; to give birth to *čačoma; čačtoms*  
 birth year *čačoma ije*  
 to bite *suskoms*  
 bitter *sepej*  
 black *raužo*  
 to blame *čumondoms*  
 blind *sokor*  
 blood *veř*  
 bludgeon *čotmar*  
 blue *seň*  
 boat *venč*  
 body *rungo*  
 bog *leťke tarka, načko tarka*  
 to boil *pijems*  
 to boil (v.i.) *lakams*  
 to boil over *čadoms*  
 bold *jon*  
 bonnet *pango*

book *kiñiga*  
 boot, boots *kem, -í*  
 to be bored *nalkstams*  
 boredom, longing *meľmoľema*  
 to be born *šačoms*  
 boss, leader *právť*  
 bottle *sulika*  
 to bow *šukoňams*  
 bowl, pelvis *vakan*  
 boy *čoriñe*  
 bracelet *kedks*  
 brain *uđem*  
 brain, sense *právť(t)*  
 branch *tarad*  
 bread *kši*  
 breath *ojmekošť, ľekšema, ľekštamo*  
 to breathe *ľekšems*  
 bride *odiřva*  
 bridge *sed*  
 brier, dog-rose *ovtumar'*  
 bright *valdo*  
 to bring *tujems, uskoms*  
 brooch *šulgamo*  
 brother and sister *ľelat-sazort*  
 brown *tuža*  
 brush *seme*  
 bull *buka*  
 bun *šukoro*  
 to burn (v.i.) *paloms*  
 to bury *kalmams*  
 bus *bus*  
 butter *oj*  
 buttercup, water lily *gorňipov*  
 butterfly *imbiľav*  
 butterfly *ñimiľav*  
 buttermilk, yogurt *čapamolovso*  
 to buy *ramams*  
 by, via *ezga*  
 by foot *jalgo*

## C

calamity *kažo*  
 calf *vaz*  
 to calm down *ojmams*  
 to capture *kundams*  
 car *mašina*  
 to care for *vanoms meľ*  
 to carry *kandoms*  
 cart *krandaz, karandaz*  
 cat *katka*  
 to catch a flame *kirvažems*

to catch up *sasams*  
 to cease (v.i.) *lotkams*  
 celebration *pokš či*  
 centre *kunška*  
 century *pinge*  
 chain *řisme*  
 chair, (sub)department *kafedra*  
 to change (v.i.) *ľijakstomoms*  
 to change (v.t.) *polavtoms*  
 character, personality *kor*

cheap *a piínej, došova*  
 chest *meštie*  
 chest, body *rungo*  
 chick *čipaka*  
 chicken *saraz*  
 child *ejkakš*  
 child taken after his mother/father *ava-, íeíta-  
 ľevks*  
 childhood *ejkakšči*  
 to chop *keřams*  
 to chop wood *laznoms (pengt)*  
 Christmas: Merry Christmas! *Roštova: Paro  
 Roštova!*  
 church *čerkova*  
 church bell *bajaga*  
 Chuvash, -genitive *vetke, -ń*  
 city *oš*  
 to clang *gajgems*  
 clay *sovoń*  
 clean *vańks*  
 to clean *šlams-nardams*  
 clear (day) *mańej*  
 clever Dick *převejka*  
 clever, sneaky *jožov*  
 close air *opańa*  
 close/near (beside), close/near (toward)  
*malaso, -v*  
 to close *pekstams*  
 clothing *oršamo(-peł)*  
 cloud *kovol*  
 club *klub*  
 cockerel *átakš*  
 coffee *kofija*  
 cold *kelme*  
 cold, frost *jakšamo*  
 to collect *kočkams, purnams*  
 colour, appearance *tus*

to comb *sudřams*  
 a comb *suršeme*  
 come, let's go! *ada, -do!*  
 to come down *valgoms*  
 to come to life *velmems*  
 concern, pain *řizks*  
 contentment *mełsparo*  
 continually, still *jala*  
 on the contrary *mekevlangk*  
 to converse *kortams, bašams*  
 to cook (soup) *pidems (jam)*  
 cool *ekše*  
 cottage cheese *topo*  
 cough, to cough *kozoma, kozoms*  
 to count *lovoms*  
 country *mastor*  
 courtyard *kardaz*  
 to cover *acams, velťams*  
 cow *skal*  
 cradle *lavš*  
 crane *kargo*  
 cream (of milk) *velks*  
 to crochet *vikšńems*  
 crow *varaka*  
 to crush *porksams, tapams*  
 to cry *avardems*  
 cucumber *kujar*  
 curd cheese *topo*  
 currant *šukštorov*  
 curved, skewed *čir*  
 custom, order *luv*  
 custom; according to *koj, -se*  
 to cut *keřams*  
 to cut (bread, meat) *pečkems (kši, sivel)*  
 czar *kezeř*  
 czar, emperor *inazor*

## D

damp *leike*  
 to dance, a dance *kišťems, kišťema*  
 dark, in the dark (/at a dark time) *čopoda,  
 topoda, -sto*  
 darling *večkeviks*  
 daughter *tejter, -ka*  
 daughter-in-law *urva*  
 day, sun *či*  
 daylight *čivaldo*  
 dear, darling *večkeviks*  
 to decay *kaladoms*  
 to deceive *mańams*  
 to decide *sajems meł*

decoration, picture *mazijka*  
 deep *domka*  
 to delay *sezņems*  
 to delete *nardams*  
 to demolish *kalavtoms*  
 to denominate *ľemdems, putoms ľem*  
 dense *šejede*  
 department *kafedra*  
 to determine the day *putoms či*  
 devotion *ozks*  
 dexterous, bold *jon*  
 dialect *kortavks*  
 dictionary *valks*

to die *kuloms*  
 difficult *staka*  
 to dig *čuvoms*  
 to dip (into water) *navams*  
 dipper *keče*  
 dirt, mud *rudaz*  
 dirty *rudazov, a vaņks*  
 at a distance *vepēle*  
 to do *īejems*  
 doctor *doktor*  
 document, paper, bill *document, koņov*  
 dog *kiska, piņe*  
 dog rose *ovtumar (ovto umar)*  
 doll *ņaka*  
 don't! (sg./pl.) *īla, -do!*

door *kenkš*  
 dough *čapaks*  
 (night)dream *on*  
 to drill *peļems*  
 to drink *simems*  
 to drive *ardoms*  
 to drive (repeatedly) *ardnēms*  
 to drive away *kravtoms, paņems*  
 to drone *zijņems*  
 to drop *pravtoms*  
 to drown *vajams*  
 dry, to dry, get dry *koške, koštams, koškems*  
 to dry up *nardams*  
 dusk *suņderks*

## E

each, every *ērva*  
 ear *pīle*  
 earlier, in front of/before *ikele*  
 earrings *pīlekst*  
 earth *moda*  
 east *čīlišema*  
 Easter *īneči*  
 easy *čožda, šožda*  
 to eat *jarsams, poņems*  
 to eat up *sevems*  
 egg *al*  
 eight *kavkso*  
 elbow *keņere*  
 to embrace, embrace (repeatedly) *kutmordams, kutmoņams*  
 to embroider *vikšņems*  
 embroidery *vikšņevks*  
 empty *čavo*  
 end *pe*  
 to end, stop (v.i.) *lotkams*  
 to end, complete (v.t.) *pradoms*  
 endless *pevteme*  
 enemy, foe *dušman*  
 England *Angļija*  
 English, -genitive *angla, -ņ*  
 English (language) *anglaņ keļ*  
 to enter *sovams*

the entire day (*čiņ, -nze*) *čop*  
 entryway *kudikeļks*  
 equal, -ly *vejkeļ, -ste*  
 Erzya, -genitive *erza, -ņ*  
 Erzyan language *erzaņ keļ*  
 Erzyan woman, man *erzava, erzāņ čora*  
 to escape *orgodemš*  
 to escort *īlāms*  
 essence *zeme*  
 Estonia *Estonija*  
 Estonian, -genitive *eston, -oņ*  
 Estonian language *estonoņ keļ*  
 Europe *Evropa*  
 even *mik*  
 evening *čokšne*  
 every *ērva*  
 every day *čiste, ērva či(ste)*  
 everything *ērva mež/e, -t*  
 altogether *vešemeze, vešemest*  
 everywhere *ērva koso, ērva kuva*  
 evil spirit *īdemevs*  
 exhibition, show *ņevīema*  
 to exit *lišems*  
 expensive *piņnej*  
 eye *šēlme*  
 eyeglasses *šēlmukšt*

## F

fabric *koct*  
 face *čama*  
 fact sheet *info-lopa*  
 faculty *fakultet*

fairy-tale *jovks*  
 to fall *prams*  
 to fall ill *prams seņedeme, ormalgadoms*  
 familiar, famous *sodaviks*

familiar, known *sodaž*  
 family *kudoraške, buje*  
 far *vasolo, -v*  
 father and son *teiat-čorat*  
 father-in-law *átavt*  
 fawn *vašo*  
 to fear *pelems*  
 feather *tolga*  
 to feed *andoms*  
 to feel ashamed *viždems*  
 feeling *jožo*  
 female person *ava-lomañ*  
 fence *piřavks, piře*  
 ferris wheel *pokš-čarij*  
 fertile, fruitful *norov*  
 fibre *koct*  
 field *pakša*  
 to fight *luřems*  
 figure *čačo, šačo*  
 film *filma*  
 to find *mujems*  
 fine, thin *čova, čoviñe*  
 finger *sur*  
 fingertip *surbrá*  
 Finland *Finlandija*  
 Finnish, -genitive *finn, -eñ*  
 Finnish language *finneñ keł*  
 fire *tol*  
 first *vašeñće*  
 at first *vašña*  
 fish *kal*  
 five *véte*  
 to fix *viřems*  
 to flee *orgódems*  
 flood water *čadivedá*  
 floor *kijaks*  
 to flow *čudems*  
 flower *balága, čéca*  
 flowing water *čuđi vedá*  
 fly *karvo, karuv*  
 to fly *livíams*  
 foe, enemy *dušman*

fog, mist *suv*  
 folklore *folklor*  
 food, something to eat *jarsamopeł*  
 foolish *čolak (přa)*  
 foot *piłge*  
 footwear (ethnographic) *kařít-prakstat*  
 footwear, shoes *kařsemapełí*  
 for *kise*  
 for a long time *kuvat, -s*  
 for some reason *mekskak*  
 for something/anything/nothing *mežekskak*  
 to forbid *kardams*  
 force, essence, substance *zeme*  
 forehead *koña*  
 foreign country *ombo mastor*  
 forest *viř*  
 to forget *stuvtoms*  
 form, figure *čačo, šačo*  
 fortune *uli-paro*  
 fountain *fontan*  
 four *niłe*  
 fox *řivež*  
 France, -genitive *Francija, -ñ*  
 to free *noldams*  
 free time *jutkoška*  
 to get free *meñems*  
 to freeze *kelmems*  
 French, -genitive *francuz, -oñ*  
 French language *francuzoñ keł*  
 Friday *peča*  
 friend *jalga*  
 friendship *jalgaksči*  
 from here *tešte*  
 from inside *pot(mo)sto*  
 from somewhere/anywhere/nowhere *kostojak*  
 from where *kostoñ*  
 front part *ikelks*  
 frost *jakšamo*  
 fruitful *norov*  
 to fry *řestams*  
 full *peškse*

## G

to gain, catch up *sasams*  
 gall *sepe*  
 gap *jutko*  
 garden, fence *piřavks*  
 garden, fence *piře*  
 to gather, collect *puřnams*  
 to gather (v.i.) *puřnavoms, puřmomoms*  
 German, -genitive *ñemeć, -eñ*

German language *ñemećeñ keł*  
 Germany *Germañija*  
 to get accustomed to *tonadoms*  
 to get better, recover *parolgadoms, pičkams*  
 to get bored *nalkstams*  
 to get to *pačkodems*  
 to get up *štams*  
 to get used to *tonadoms*

gift, present; to give as a gift *kažńe, kaźems*  
 girl /daughter, -diminutive *ńejńeń, -ka*  
 to give *maksoms*  
 to give one's word *maksoms val*  
 to gladden *kećams, keńardoms*  
 gladly, with pleasure *paro meńse*  
 gladness *kećamo, keńarks*  
 glass, bottle *sulika*  
 to glitter *ćildordoms*  
 to go *jakams, mońems*  
 to go out *ńisems*  
 go! (sg./pl.) *aźo, -do*  
 to go to bed *madems*  
 to go up *kuźems*  
 god *paz*  
 goddess, icon *pazava*  
 goddess of fertility *norovava*  
 gold *sirńe*  
 good *par/o, -ńe; vadńa*  
 Good-bye, see you (*liter. us*) later!  
*ńejemazonok!*

goodness *paroći*  
 gown *ruća*  
 grandchild *nućka*  
 grandfather and -mother *pokńiat-babat*  
 grandfather, -vocative *bońa, -j*  
 grandmother, -vocative *baba, -j*  
 grass, hay *ńikńe*  
 grave *kalmo*  
 graveyard *kalmolango*  
 green *piźe*  
 to grind *jaźams*  
 grey (day) *nusmańa*  
 to grow (v.i.) *kasoms*  
 to grow (v.t.) *kastoms*  
 to grow in numbers *rańtams*  
 to grow old *sirńedems*  
 to guard *vanstoms*  
 guest *inźe*  
 guest house *inźeń kudo*  
 guide *veńića*

## H

hail *ćarahman*  
 hair *ćeń, -ń*  
 hall *zal*  
 half, -suffix *peń, -peń*  
 hand, arm *keń*  
 handful *komoro*  
 handkerchief *paćińe*  
 handle, stem *ńeń*  
 Happy New Year! *Paro od ije!*  
 hard, difficult *staka*  
 hard (*adv.*) *stakasto*  
 hare, rabbit *numolo*  
 hay *straw*  
 he /she *son*  
 he /she (himself/herself) *sonń*  
 head *pńa, pińa*  
 health *ńumbraći*  
 healthy *ńumbra*  
 to hear *mańams*  
 to be heard *mańavoms*  
 heart *seńej*  
 to heat *eźdemś*  
 hedgehog *seńeń*  
 height *seń*  
 help, to help *ńeze, ńezdams*  
 her, his *sonze*  
 here *ńese*  
 here and there (toward) *ńej-tov*  
 here and there (across) *ńija-tuva*

to hesitate *kavtoldoms*  
 to hide *kekńems*  
 high *seńej*  
 hill *mar*  
 hole *vańa*  
 holiday, celebration *pokń ći*  
 home, house *kudo*  
 honey *meń*  
 hopefully, maybe *pańak*  
 horn *ńuro*  
 horse *ńišme, alańa*  
 host, -ess *azor, -ava*  
 hot *pńi*  
 hotel, guesthouse *oteń, inźeń kudo*  
 hour *ćas*  
 how *koda*  
 how far *kona vińś*  
 how long, until when *ńńars, źars*  
 how much *ńńaro, źaro*  
 however, nevertheless *jalateke*  
 hug *kutmordavks*  
 to hug, hug (repeatedly) *kutmordams,*  
*kutmorńams*  
 hundred *ńado*  
 Hungarian, -genitive *vengra, -ń*  
 Hungarian language *vengrań keń*  
 Hungary *Vengńija*  
 hunger *vaćoći*  
 hungry *vaćodo*

to be hungry *vačoms, vačomoms*  
to hurry *kapšams*

husband *miŗde*  
husband's sister *parija*

## I J

I *mon*  
I (myself) *mons*  
ice *ej*  
icicle (-horn) *ejžuro (-šuro)*  
icon *pazava*  
illness *orma, seŗedema*  
to be ill, sick *seŗedems*  
in(side) *pot(mo)so*  
in a (my) dream (possessive) *onsto/-m*  
in autumn *šokšņa*  
in front of *ikele*  
in no way *kodajak*  
in previous years *manit*  
in secret *salava*  
in some places *kuva-kuva*  
in spring *tunda*  
in summer *kizna*  
in the beginning, at first *vašņa*  
in the daytime *čit*  
in the morning *valske marto*  
in the old times *kezeŗeņ škaŗe, -sto*  
in the previous years *manit*

in winter *telņa*  
infant *ejde*  
inhabitant *eŗiŗa*  
to injure *kolams*  
innocent *ŗumovtomo*  
inside *pot(mo)so*  
to inspect *vannoms*  
intelligent *ŗaŗkoŗiŗa*  
to intend *sajems mel*  
interior of a building *kudopotmo*  
into *pot(mo)s*  
into, in, from inside *ej/s, -se, -ste*  
to invite *ŗerdems*  
iron *kšņi*  
is necessary, must (do) *eŗavi, -t*  
island *uŗija*  
it, that *se*  
Italy, -genitive *Italija, -ņ*  
Italian language *italijaŗ keŗ*  
job *tev*  
joy, contentment *melŗparo*  
joy, gladness *keŗarks*

## K

Karelia, -genitive *Kaŗelija, -ņ*  
Karelian, -genitive *kaŗel, -eņ*  
Karelian language *kaŗeleŗ keŗ*  
to keep *kirdems*  
to keep an eye on *vanstoms*  
kilometre, verst (*liter. voice end*) *vajgelbe (-pe)*  
to kill *tapams,ŗavoms*  
kin, tribe *buje*

a kind of *ta-kodamo*  
to kiss *palams*  
knee *kuma(n)ŗa*  
knife *pejel*  
to knit *kodams*  
knitting *kodamo*  
knot *ŗulmo*  
to know *sodams*  
kvass, mead *puŗe*

## L

ladle, dipper *keŗe*  
lake *eŗke*  
land, country *mastor*  
land, earth *moda*  
landlord, -lady *kudazor, -ava*  
language, tongue *keŗ*  
lap *eŗe*  
at last *okojņiki*  
last year *melat*

last, most recent *meŗelŗe*  
Latvia, -genitive *Latvija, -ņ*  
Latvian, -genitive *latiŗ, -eņ*  
Latvian language *latiŗeŗ keŗ*  
to laugh *peŗdems*  
laundry *muŗkema*  
to do laundry *muŗkems*  
lazy, -ness *nuŗaks, -ŗi*  
to lay eggs *alijams*



leader, guide *veŕiċa*  
 leaf *lopa*  
 lecture *Ĺekċija*  
 to learn *tonavtnĕms*  
 left (side) *kerš (peĹ, jon)*  
 leg, foot *piĹge*  
 to let go *noldams*  
 Let's go! *aċa, -do (sg. /pl.)*  
 letter *šorma*  
 library *biblioiĕka, lovnomakudo*  
 to lick *nolams*  
 life *eŕamo*  
 lifetime, century *pinge*  
 to lift *kepedems*  
 light (*ċi*) *valdo*  
 light, easy *ċoŕda, ŝoŕda*  
 light; light, bright *valdo*  
 lightning *jondol (-tol)*  
 like, similar *koŕdamo*  
 line, side *jon*  
 linen *Ĺijanaz*  
 lip *turva*

to listen *kunsoloms*  
 Lithuania, -genitive *Ĺitva, -ŕi*  
 Lithuanian, -genitive *Ĺitov, -oŕi*  
 Lithuanian language *Ĺitovoŕi keĹ*  
 little, few *alamo*  
 a little *alamo/do, -ška*  
 to live *eŕams*  
 lively, healthy, vivid *eŕaza*  
 liver *makso*  
 log fire *tolbaŕda (paŕda 'bed for plants')*  
 long *kuvaka*  
 long ago, way back, ancient *umok, -oŕi*  
 look here *vana*  
 to look *vanoms*  
 look! *vanta!*  
 to look for *veŝnĕms*  
 to lose *jumavtoms, jo-*  
 a lot *lamo*  
 to love *veċkems*  
 love *veċkema*  
 low *alkiŕe*  
 lower end of the village, street *alo pe, kuro*

## M

magazine *gaŕet*  
 male, man, boy *ċora*  
 male (person) *ċora-lomaŕi*  
 male, small boy *ċoriŕe*  
 male, old man *aċa*  
 man, husband *miŕde*  
 man (*in folk poetry*) *aŕdamo*  
 many people together, -possessive *lamoŕe/-st*  
 many times *lamokŝi*  
 maple *ukŝtor*  
 Mari language *maŕi keĹ*  
 to marry (to go to a man) *Ĺiŝems mirdeŕeŕi*  
 to marry (to take a wife) *uŕvakstoms*  
 market square, place *bazaar, jarmunka*  
 marketplace, fair *najman*  
 maternal grandmother *vasolbaba*  
 maybe, presumably (*sg. /pl.*) *uĹema(-t)*  
 means of help *Ĺezks*  
 measure, weight *onks*  
 to measure *onkstams*  
 meat *siveĹ*  
 medicine *ormameŕks*  
 meeting *vastoma*  
 to melt *solams*  
 Merry Christmas! *Paro Roŝtova!*  
 middle, centre *kunŝka*  
 midnight *peĹeve*  
 milk *lovso*  
 to milk (a cow) *poĹavtoms (skal)*

mill *veĹgeŕ (-kev)*  
 mind *meĹ*  
 mist *suv*  
 Moksha, -genitive *mokŝo, -ŕi*  
 Mokshan language *mokŝoŕi keĹ*  
 Mokshan woman *mokŝava*  
 Monday *poŕdeĹŕnik*  
 money *jarmak*  
 monkey *obeŝgan*  
 moon, month *kov*  
 morning, in the morning *valske (marto)*  
 mortar *ċovar*  
 Moscow, -genitive *Moskov, -oŕi*  
 mosquito *ŝeŝke*  
 moss *nupoŕi*  
 mother, -vocative *ava, -j*  
 mother and daughter *avat-tejĵeŕi*  
 mother-in-law *avavt*  
 mottled, patterned *šormav*  
 mountain, hill *pando*  
 mouse *ċejeŕ*  
 mouth *kurgo*  
 mud *rudaz*  
 multitude *lamoċi*  
 murky, dark, dirty *butra, -v*  
 mushroom *pango*  
 music *ŝedamo, muzika*  
 must, is necessary *eŕavi*  
 my, mine *moŕi*

## N

nail (finger-) *kenže*  
 nail *eske*  
 naked *štapo*  
 name *ím*  
 to name *ímđams, putoms ím*  
 nature, surroundings *peřt-pelks*  
 near, (to) near *malaso, -v*  
 neck *kirga*  
 to be needed /necessary *eřavoms*  
 needle *salmuks*  
 neighbour *šabra*  
 nest *pize*  
 new, young *od*  
 next *mejelks*  
 next year *si ijeste*  
 night *ve*

at night *veř*  
 nightingale *ćokov*  
 nine *vejkse*  
 no (past negation) *ež*  
 no, not *avol*  
 no, not, un- *a*  
 nose *sudo*  
 to notice *ředams, nejems*  
 to notify *paćtams val*  
 nothing *mezejak*  
 not once *veštak*  
 never *šardojak*  
 now *nej*  
 nowhere *kosojak*  
 nut *pešte*

## O

oak *tumo*  
 objection *karšo val*  
 ocean *ineved*  
 odour *ćine*  
 off, of, from *langsto*  
 often *sejedste*  
 oh *vaj*  
 old *sire*  
 old, worn-out *tašto*  
 older brother; uncle *lela*  
 older sister and younger brother *pařat-jalakst*  
 older sister, aunt *pata*  
 on foot *jalgo*  
 on to, on *lang/s, -so*  
 once *vešt, tago-sřardo*

once (one time) *kirda*  
 one *vejke*  
 onion *ćurka*  
 only, but *ansak*  
 open *panžado*  
 to open *panžoms*  
 opposite *karšo*  
 orphan *uroz*  
 other, different *lija*  
 other, another *ombo*  
 our *miňek*  
 outside *ušoso*  
 oven *kaštom(o)*  
 own *eš*  
 ox, bull *buka*

## P

pain *seředks*  
 to paint *artoms*  
 painting *artoma*  
 palate *kurgo meňel*  
 paper *koňov*  
 part *pelks*  
 past (time) *ikeleň, jutaž (ška)*  
 past, by *vakska*  
 path *jan*  
 path, road *ki*  
 patty *přaka*  
 to pay *pandoms, maksoms*  
 pea *kšnav*

peaceful *seíme*  
 pearl, pearls *eřge, eřgt*  
 pearls *ćovalat*  
 pension *penšija*  
 people *raške*  
 person *lomaň*  
 photo *foto*  
 pie *panžakaj*  
 to pick *kepeđems*  
 picture *mazijka, kartina*  
 piece *pal*  
 pig *tuvo*  
 piglet *pursoz*

pigtail *čerbuló (-pulo)*  
pillow *todov*  
pine *piče*  
pipe *čílem*  
place *tarka*  
to place, put *putoms*  
to plant vegetables *putoms emezít*  
plank *laz, planka*  
to play *nalkséms*  
to play (an instrument) *šedáms*  
pocket *žepe*  
porridge *kaša*  
pot *čakš, -ke*  
potato *modamař*

to pour *valoms, kajams*  
to praise (k) *šnamš*  
to prepare *jorams*  
present *nejeň (škaň)*  
presumably *pařak*  
price *piťne*  
to promise *altams*  
promise *altavks*  
proverb *valmeřevks*  
to pull *targams*  
to push *tulkadems*  
to put to bed, turn off *madštémš*  
to put (together) *putoms, aravtoms (vejs)*  
to put on *oršams*

## Q

question *kevksítéma*  
quick, -ly *kurok, -sto*

quiet, peaceful *seíme*

## R

rabbit *numolo*  
rag, tatter *nula*  
rain *pižeme*  
to rain *pižems*  
to raise (a child) *kastoms*  
rare *čuro*  
rare, -ly *čuro, -sto*  
raspberry *iňzej*  
to read *lovnoms*  
reading *lovnoma*  
ready *anok*  
really (oh, really) *kaňa*  
rear, hind (adj.) *udalče*  
reason *čumo*  
reason, cause *tuvtal*  
to recover *pičkams*  
red *jaksíteře*  
reed pipe *nudej*  
to rejoice *kečams*  
to release *noldams*  
to remember *melse kirdémš*  
to replace, change *polavtoms*  
to request *kevksstémš, vešems*

to rest *ojmšems*  
to return, come back *mekev sams, velávtoms*  
to revolve *čaramš*  
rib *iřdeks*  
rich *koža, šupav*  
riddle *sodamojovks*  
right (side) *viť (peľ)*  
ring *surks*  
to ripen *keňeřems*  
river *lej*  
road *ki*  
robe, gown *ruća*  
root *jur*  
rope *piks*  
rotten *naksado*  
rowan *pižol*  
rumble *zeřít*  
Russia(-n land) *Ruzoň mastor*  
Russian, -genitive *Ruz, -oň*  
Russian woman *ruzava*  
rust *čemeň*  
rye *rož*

## S

sad (day) *nusmaňa (či)*  
salt, -y *sal, -ov*  
same *šeke*

Saransk (city) *Saran (oš)*  
Saturday *subuta*  
sauna *šlamo kudo, baňa*

to say (a word) *meřems (val)*  
 scissors *vasońbejelń (pejelń)*  
 to scold *murńems*  
 sea *ńevedń*  
 to search for *vešńems*  
 to scream *rangoms, pižńems*  
 second *omboće*  
 to see *ńejems*  
 seed *vidme*  
 to seed *videms*  
 to seem: it seems *ńejavi*  
 to sell *mijems*  
 seller *mijića*  
 to send *kućoms*  
 sense *meń*  
 separate *baška*  
 seven *śišem*  
 to sew *stams*  
 sewing *stamo*  
 shadow *sulej*  
 shame *vižks, -ś-*  
 to shave *narams*  
 she, he *son*  
 sheep *řeve*  
 shin *śerka*  
 shirt, tunic *panar*  
 shoe *kota*  
 to shoot *ledems*  
 short *nuřk/a, -ińe*  
 shoulder, -s *lavtov, -t*  
 to shout *rangoms, pižńems*  
 shovel *kojme*  
 show *ńevńems*  
 sickle *tarvaz*  
 sickness, illness *orma*  
 side, location *pelńks, čirė*  
 sign *ėšks*  
 silk *paršej*  
 silver *śija*  
 sin *pežetń*  
 to sing, sing (repeatedly) *morams, morśems*  
 singer *morića*  
 singing *moramo*  
 sister (younger sister) *sazor*  
 sister-in-law *uráž*  
 to sit, take a seat *ozams*  
 sitting *ozado*  
 six *koto*  
 ski *soks*  
 skill, ability *gorok*  
 skin *keń*  
 sky *meńelń*  
 slave *urė*  
 to sleep *udoms*  
 sleeping place *udoma tarka*

sleeve *oža*  
 sleigh *nurdo*  
 slender *čovińe*  
 slippery *nolaža, navolo*  
 slowly, steadily *sasto, sastińeste*  
 small, few *alamo*  
 small *višińe, viška, viškińe*  
 to smell *ńiķśems*  
 to smell, to feel smell *mařams čińe*  
 smoke *kačamo*  
 smooth *valańa*  
 snake *guj, kuj*  
 snot *noľgo*  
 snot-nosed *noľgař, noľgo tulo*  
 snow, -y *lov, -ov*  
 so *eř*  
 so, thus *iřta*  
 soap *sapoń*  
 soft *čevće*  
 some *koj-kona*  
 some (of them) *konařkak*  
 some, quite a lot *śnarija, žarija*  
 somehow/anyhow/in no way *kodajak*  
 someone/anyone/no-one *kijak*  
 something *koj-meže*  
 something to read *lovnomapelń*  
 something, anything, nothing *mežejak*  
 sometime, once *tago-śńardo*  
 sometimes *śńardo-śńardo*  
 somewhere, anywhere, nowhere *kuvajak, kosoľak*  
 somewhere, nowhere *kovgak*  
 son *ćora-ekakš*  
 song *moro*  
 soul, breath *ojme*  
 sound *gaj*  
 to sound *gajgems, kajavoms*  
 sound of feet trampling *dubor-dubor*  
 soup *jam*  
 sour *čapamo*  
 source, spring *lišmapřa*  
 span (old unit of length, 12–23 cm) *vaks*  
 spark *śatko*  
 sparrow *ožaz*  
 to speak *kortams*  
 to spit *śelgems*  
 spoon *penč*  
 spring *tundo*  
 spruce *kuz*  
 square, lea, clearing, union *kužo*  
 squirrel *ur*  
 to stand in place, be *ařńems*  
 standing *śtado*  
 star *ėšće*  
 to steal *salamś*

stem (of a plant) *nétkš*  
 to step on *čalgams*  
 stepmother *odava*  
 still, continually *jala*  
 stomach *peke*  
 stone *kev*  
 to stop (v.i.) *lotkams*  
 storm *davol*  
 straight *vidste*  
 (leather, *genitive*) strap (*kšnań*) *karks*  
 straw *olgo*  
 strawberry *kstij, kistij*  
 stream *čudikeřks*  
 street *kuro*  
 street *pe, ulća,*  
 strength, force *vij*  
 strong, -ly *vijev, -ste*  
 student *student*  
 to suffice *satoms*

sufficiently *satoška*  
 suits *kačamo*  
 summer *kize*  
 sun, day *či*  
 Sunday *nedlači*  
 sunrise, east *čilišema*  
 sunset, west *čivalgoma*  
 support *neže*  
 supposedly *keľa*  
 swallow (bird) *čanav*  
 swamp, bog *leike tarka*  
 swamp, bog *načko tarka*  
 Swede, -*genitive* *Šved, -eń*  
 Sweden *Švedčija*  
 sweet, candy *kańvetka*  
 sweet *lambamo*  
 swing *nuřamo*  
 to switch off, put to bed, delete *madštěms*

## T

tail *pulo*  
 to take *sajems*  
 to talk *kortams, bašams*  
 tall *seřej*  
 tasty; tastily *tańtej, -ste*  
 to teach *tonavtoms*  
 tear (drop) *šelved*  
 to tear *šežems*  
 to tell *jovtams*  
 ten *kemeń*  
 Thank you! *šuk-pra!*  
 that *še*  
 then *šeste*  
 there *toso*  
 these *ńe, (-ńie)*  
 they *siń*  
 they (themselves) *sins*  
 thick *ečke*  
 thin, fine, -*diminutive* *čova, čovińe*  
 to think *aršems*  
 thirty *kolmońgemeń*  
 this *te*  
 this year *tedéde*  
 this/that kind of *ištamo*  
 those (it, that, *plural*) *šetńe*  
 thought, wish *aršema*  
 thousand *tožeń, tišča*  
 three *kolmo*  
 throat *kirgapař*  
 through *peřt, pačk*  
 through there *tuva*

to throw *jortoms*  
 thumb *pelka*  
 thunder, rumble *puřgińe*  
 Thursday *četverķ*  
 thus *išta*  
 ticket *biľet*  
 to tie *šulmams*  
 time: at the right time *ška: škastonzo*  
 tip, treetop *řokš*  
 to become tired *šizems*  
 today *teči*  
 together *vejse*  
 tongue *keľ*  
 too -*kak* /-*gak* /-*jak*  
 tooth *pej*  
 to touch *tokams*  
 tough *kalgodo, vijev*  
 towel *nardamo*  
 town *oš*  
 toy *nalkške*  
 train *pojezd*  
 to treat *kavańams*  
 tree, wood (material) *čuvto*  
 tree bark *keř*  
 treetop *čuvtopřa*  
 tribe, family *buje*  
 true *vide*  
 to try *ieřavtoms, varčams*  
 Tuesday *ovtorńik*  
 tunic *panar*  
 to turn *purdams,*

to turn, return *velávtoms*  
to turn, revolve *čarams*  
twenty *komś*

twig *ílov*  
two *kavto*

## U

udder *odar*  
unanimously *ve(jke) melše*  
uncle *léla*  
under, lower *alo*  
to understand *čar'kodems*  
understanding (n.) *čar'kodema*  
(old) unit of mass (16 kg) *pondo*  
university *uhiversítet*

until *vidś*  
Until we meet! *vastamazonok!*  
up (to) *veřev*  
up, high (across) *veřga*  
upper end of the village, upper street *veře pe,*  
*kuro*  
upper part, top *veřks*

## V

vegetable *emež*  
vegetable garden *emežpiře*  
vein *san*  
very *pek, veĺt*

village *veĺe*  
voice *vajgeĺ*  
Volga *Rav*

## W

to wait *učoms*  
Wait! (sg. /pl.) *užo, -do*  
warm *lembe*  
to warm *eždems*

to warm up (v.i.) *ežems*  
to wash *šlams*  
to wash the head; to scold *pezems prá*

## Appendix V. Audio-materials

University of Tartu, Archives of Estonian Dialects and Kindred Languages;  
[www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv](http://www.murre.ut.ee/arhiiv), search: DS0169-01 through DS0169-24.